

T H E
R U D I M E N T S
O F T H E
Latin Tongue;
O R
A plain and easy Introduction
T O
Latin Grammar;

W H E R E I N

The P R I N C I P L E S of the L A N G U A G E
are methodically digested both in E N -
G L I S H and L A T I N.

W I T H

Useful N O T E S and O B S E R V A T I O N S, explaining the
T E R M S of G R A M M A R, and farther improving its
R U L E S.

By T H O. R U D D I M A N, M. A.

The seventeenth Edition corrected.

E D I N B U R G H:

Printed by W A L. R U D D I M A N, and C O M P A N Y, and sold
by the W I D O W of the A U T H O R, and the B O O K S E L -
L E R S there. M. D C C. L X I X.

GEORGE R.

GEORGE the Second, by the Grace of God, King of Great Britain, France and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. To all to whom these Presents shall come, greeting: Whereas THOMAS RUDDIMAN, late Keeper of the Library, belonging to the Society of Advocates in Our City of Edinburgh, hath, by his Petition, humbly represented unto Us, That, several Years ago, he composed, and published, two Books, one of them entituled, "The Rudiments of the Latin Tongue; or a plain and easy Introduction to Latin Grammar; wherein the Principles of the Language are methodically digested, both in English and Latin, with useful Notes and Observations, explaining the Terms of Grammar, and farther improving its Rules, by THO. RUDDIMAN, M. A." And the other entituled, "Grammaticæ Latinæ Institutiones, facili, & ad puerorum captum accommodata, methodo perscriptæ, THOMAS RUDDIMANNO, A. M. Auctore." That the said Books have been universally taught in Schools, and that the Petitioner, with the utmost Submission, apprehends they have already been, and will continue to be, of great Advantage to the Publick; and being desirous to reap the Fruits of his Labour, and of enjoying the full Profit and Benefit that may arise from printing and vending the said Books, without any other Person interfering in his just Property, (which he cannot prevent without Our Royal Licence and Privilege) he hath, therefore, most humbly prayed us, to grant unto him, his Executors, Administrators and Assigns, Our Royal Licence and Privilege for the sole printing, publishing and vending the said Books, in as ample Manner and Form, as hath been done in Cases of the like Nature: We, being willing to give Encouragement to all Works that may be of publick Use and Benefit, are graciously pleased to condescend to the Petitioner's Request, and do accordingly, by these Presents, so far as may be agreeable to a Statute, in that Case made and provided, grant unto the said THOMAS RUDDIMAN, his Heirs, Executors, Administrators, and Assigns, Our Royal Privilege and Licence for the sole printing, publishing, and vending the said Books, during the Term of fourteen Years, to be computed from the Date hereof; strictly forbidding and prohibiting all Our Subjects, within Our Kingdoms and Dominions, to reprint or abridge the same, either in the like, or any other Volume or Volumes, whatsoever, or to import, buy, vend, utter, or distribute, any Copie thereof, reprinted beyond the Seas, during the aforesaid Term of Fourteen Years, without the Consent or Approbation of the said THOMAS RUDDIMAN, his Heirs, Executors, Administrators, and Assigns, under their Hands and Seals, first had and obtained, as they and every of them, offending herein, will answer the contrary at their Peril, whereof the Commissioners and other Officers of Our Customs, the Master, Wardens, and Company of Stationers of Our City of London, and all other Officers and Ministers whom it may concern, are to take Notice, that due Obedience be given to Our Pleasure herein signified.

Given at Our Court at Kensington the Fifth Day of May, 1756, in the Twenty-ninth Year of our Reign.

By his Majesty's Command,

HOLDERNESSE.





T H E

P R E F A C E.

AMONG the several Instructors of Youth in this Nation, many have for a long Time complained, that the two *Rudiments* of the *Latin* Tongue, commonly taught in our Schools, are many Ways insufficient in respect to the End proposed by them: That the one is written wholly in *Latin*, the very Language it is designed to teach; that the other is defective, particularly in the *Syntax*; and that the Rules of both are often obscure and intricate, and sometimes false and erroneous. Whereupon some knowing Masters of that Profession, by their repeated Solicitations, prevailed with me to undertake the compiling of a new *Rudiments*, which they conceived might, in a great Measure, be freed from the Faults and Defects of the former, and so

contrived, as to bring down its *Rules* to the Level of a Boy's Capacity, and make them enter with more Ease and Familiarity into his Mind. This is the End I had in view: With what Success it has been prosecuted is a Province for others, not me, to determine. However, if any thing inclines me to hope its Acceptance in the World, it is owing to the kind Assistance I have had from time to time of the above mentioned, and other Gentlemen, as the Duty of their respective Employments would permit them. What discouraged me most in this Undertaking, was the different Opinions of *Grammarians*, with the sharp Contests and Disputes they have had about the Method of *Instruction*, and the most proper Way to communicate the *Latin* Tongue to others, with the greatest Facility and Expedition. It would be almost an endless Task to reckon up the various *Schemes* that have been projected for that Purpose: Therefore I shall engage no farther in this Subject, than as it seems necessary to give my Reader a clear and distinct View of the Reasons that determined me to the Method I have followed.

I have long observed, that those of our Country, whose Business it is to direct the Studies of Youth, are greatly divided about what an *Introduction* to *Latin Grammar*

ought properly to contain, and in what Language its Precepts should be conveyed. Some are for contracting it into as narrow Limits as is possible, and not to burden the Memory of the Learner with any thing but what is essential and absolutely necessary; while others contend that this is too general, and not sufficient to direct his Practice, without the Addition of more particular Rules. Again, tho' the greater Part incline to have the first *Principles of Grammar* communicated in a known Language, there are not a few, and of these some Persons of Distinction, who are still for retaining them in *Latin*, which, tho' attended at first with more Difficulty, makes (in their Judgment) a more lasting Impression on the Mind, and carries the Learner more directly to the Habit of speaking *Latin*, a Practice much used in our Schools. It appeared next to an Impossibility to satisfy so many different Opinions: However, the Method I have taken seems to bid fairest for it. For I have reduced the Substance of these *Rudiments* into a Sort of *Text*, and have given the *Latin* an *English* Version, leaving the Master to his own Choice and Discretion which to use. And, that none may complain that the *Text* is too compendious, I have subjoined large *Notes*, which, I humbly conceive, will supply that Defect.

To render my Design of more general Use, I was obliged to fall in with this Expedient, which has produced one Inconvenience, namely, that the Book is thereby swelled to a much greater Bulk than I could have wished, or some perhaps will excuse; tho' the Reasons are so obvious, that it is needless to relate them. I confess I have been larger in the *Notes* than the Nature of a *Rudiments* seemed to require; but as I presume there is nothing in them but what may be useful either to Master or Scholar; and since it was never my Intention that they should be all taught, or any of them, with the same Care as the *Essential Parts*, I thought they might the more easily be dispensed with. There is one Thing more, which has considerably increased them, viz. the *Remarks* I have added on *English Nouns, Pronouns, and Verbs*, which I judged useful on a double Account; *First*, As they serve to illustrate *Latin Grammar*, the first Notions and Impressions whereof we receive from the Language we ourselves speak. *Secondly*, Because the greater Number of those who are taught the *Latin Tongue*, reap little other Benefit from it, than as it enables them to speak and write *English* with the greater Exactness, I supposed it would not be amiss to throw in something in order to that End.

Having thus given a general *Plan* of my Undertaking, all I shall say of the particular Management of it is, that I have laboured all along to render every Thing as plain and easy as I possibly could, considering with a tender Regard for whose Benefit it is designed. I have consulted the best *Grammarians*, both ancient and modern, and have borrowed from them whatever I conceived fit for my Purpose; tho' not contenting myself with their bare Authority, I frequently had Recourse to the Fountain itself, I mean the purest Writers of the *Latin* Tongue. As thus I have been solicitous to avoid *Error*, so I have been cautious not to incur the Censure of having affected *Novelty*, and therefore have receded no farther from the common *Systems* than I think they have receded from Truth; retaining the usual *Terms* of *Art*, which have so long obtained in the Schools, tho' sometimes I have taken the Liberty, as I saw occasion for it, to explain them my own Way. That I might lay no more Weight on the Memories of Children than they could well bear, I have reduced the *Rules* to as small a Number as the Subject would allow of, and conceived them in as few Words as was consistent with Perspicuity; leaving it to the Industry of the Teacher to explain them more fully, as he shall find necessary, with-

out which no *Rules* can be sufficient. The *Syntax* is indeed longer than was to be wished; but I frankly own, that I do not see how it can be made much shorter, without either confounding its Order, or leaving out the *Elliptical Rules*. However, to remove the Objection as much as I could, I have subjoined a more *Compendious Syntax*, consisting only of a few *Fundamental Rules*, which may be taught alone, or before the other, as the Judgment and Discretion of the Master shall direct him.

The
sh-
ow
her
the
the
ab-
ing
may
the
hall



T H E
R U D I M E N T S
O F T H E
Latin Tongue :
O R
A plain and easy Introduction
T O
Latin Grammar.

PARS PRIMA.

PART FIRST.

De Literis & Syllabis.

Of Letters and Syllables.

Magister.

Master.

QUOT sunt Literæ apud Latinos?

HOW many Letters are there among the Latins?

Discipulus. Quinque & viginti; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

Scholar. Five and twenty; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

M. How are they divided?

D. In Vocales & Consonantes.

S. Into Vowels and Consonants.

M. Quot sunt Vocales?

M. How many Vowels are there?

D. Sex; a, e, i, o, u, y.

S. Six; a, e, i, o, u, y.

2 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue, Part I.

M. Quot sunt Consonantes ?

D. Novemdecim ; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. Quot sunt Diphthongi ?

D. Quinque ; *ae, [vel æ] oe, [vel æ] au, eu, ei ; ut, ætas, vel ætas, poena, vel pœna, audio, euge, hei.*

M. How many Consonants are there ?

S. Nineteen ; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. How many Diphthongs are there ?

S. Five ; *ae, [or æ] oe [or æ] au, eu, ei ; as, ætas, or ætas, poena, or pœna, audio, euge, hei.*

N O T E S.

GRAMMAR is the Art of speaking any Language rightly ; as, Hebrew, Greek, Latin, English, &c.

Latin Grammar is the Art of speaking rightly the *Latin Tongue*.

The *RUDIMENTS* of that Grammar Are plain and easy Instructions, teaching Beginners the first Principles, or the most common and necessary Rules of *Latin*.

The *Rudiments* may be reduced to these four Heads, I. Treating of Letters. II. Of Syllables. III. Of Words. IV. Of Sentences.

These are naturally made up one of another ; for one or more Letters make a Syllable, one or more Syllables make a Word, and two or more Words make a Sentence.

A *Letter* is a Mark or Character representing an uncompounded Sound.

K, Y, Z, are only to be found in Words originally *Greek*, and *H* by some is not accounted a Letter, but a Breathing.

We reckon the *J*. called *Jod* [or *Je*] and the *V*. called *Vau*, two Letters distinct from *I* and *U*, because not only their Figures, but their Powers or Sounds are quite different ; *J* sounding like *G* before *E* and *V* almost like *F*.

A *Vowel* is a Letter that makes a full and perfect Sound by itself.

A *Consonant* is a Letter that cannot sound without a Vowel.

A *Syllable* is any one complete Sound.

There can be no Syllable without a Vowel : And any of the five Vowels alone, or any Vowel with one or more Consonants before or after it, make a Syllable.

There are for the most part as many Syllables in a Word as there are Vowels in it : Only there are two Kinds of Syllables in which it is otherwise, viz. 1. When *U* with any other Vowel comes after *G, Q* or *S*, as in *Lingua, Qui, Suadeo* ; where the Sound of the *U* vanishes, or is little heard. 2. When two Vowels join to make a Diphthong or double Vowel.

A *Diphthong* is a Sound compounded of the Sounds of two Vowels, so as both of them are heard.

Of *Diphthongs* three are *Proper*, viz. *au, eu, ei*, in which both Vowels are heard ; and two *Improper*, viz. *æ, œ*, in which the *a* and *o* are not heard, but they are pronounced as *e* simple.

Some, not without Reason, to these five Diphthongs, add other three ; as, *ai* in *Maia*, *oi* in *Troia*, *yi* or *ui* in *Harpyia* or *Harpyia*.

PARS SECUNDA.

PART SECOND.

De Dictionibus.

Of Words.

M. **Q**uot sunt Partes Or-
tionis ?

D. Octo ; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium, Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur ?

D. In Declinabiles & Indeclinabiles.

M. Quot sunt Declinabiles ?

D. Quatuor ; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium.*

M. Quot sunt Indeclinabiles ?

D. Item quatuor ; *Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

M. **H**OW many Parts of
Speech are there ?

S. Eight ; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle ; Adverb, Preposition Interjection, Conjunction.

M. How are they divided ?

S. Into Declinable and Indeclinable.

M. How many are Declinable ?

S. Four ; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle.

M. How many are Indeclinable ?

S. Likewise four ; Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

A Word [*Vox* or *dictio*] is one or more Syllables joined together, which Men have agreed upon to signify something.

Words are commonly reduced to eight Classes, called *Parts of Speech* : But some comprise them all under three Classes, viz. *Noun, Verb, and Adverb*. Under *Noun* they comprehend also *Pronoun* and *Participle* ; and under *Adverb* also *Preposition, Interjection* and *Conjunction*. Others to these add a fourth Class, viz. *Adnoun*, comprehending *Adjectives* under it, and restricting *Noun* to *Substantives* only. These by some are otherwise called *Names, Qualities, Affirmations* and *Particles*.

The declinable Parts of Speech are so called, because there is some Change made upon them, especially in their last Syllables : And this is what we call *Declension*, or *declining* of Words. But the indeclinable Parts continue unchangeably the same.

The last Syllable, on which these Changes do fall, is called the *Ending* or *Termination* of Words.

These Changes are made by what Grammarians call *Accidentia*, i. e. *The Accidents* of Words.

These *Accidents* are commonly reckoned six, viz. *Gender, Case, Number ; Mood, Tense* and *Person*. Of these, *Gender* and *Case* are peculiar to three of the declinable Parts of Speech, viz. *Noun, Pronoun* and *Participle* ; and *Mood, Tense* and *Person* are peculiar to one of them, viz. *Verb* : And *Number* is common to them all.

NOTE I. That *Person* may also be said to belong to *Noun* or *Pronoun* : But then it is not properly an *Accident*, because no Change is made by it in the Word.

NOTE, 1. That *Figure, Species, and Comparison*, which some call *Accidents*, do not properly come under that Name, because the Words have a different Signification from what they had before. See Chap. IX.

NOTE, 3. That the Changes that happen to a Noun, Pronoun, and Participle, are, in a stricter Sense, called *Declension or Declination* of them, and the Changes that happen to a Verb are called *Conjugation*.

CAP. I.

De Nomine.

M. **Q**uomodo declinatur Nomen?

D. Per Genera, Casus, & Numeros.

M. Quot sunt Genera?

D. Tria; Masculinum, Femininum & Neutrum.

M. Quot sunt Casus?

D. Sex; Nominativus, Genitivus, Dativus, Accusativus, Vocativus, & Ablativus.

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

D. Duo; Singularis & Pluralis.

M. Quot sunt Declinationes?

D. Quinque; Prima, Secunda, Tertia, Quarta, & Quinta.

REGULÆ GENERALES.

1. Nomina neutri generis habent Nominativum, Accusativum & Vocativum similes in utroque Numero: & hi Casus in Plurali semper desinunt in a.

2. Vocativus in Singulari plerumque, in plurali semper, est similis Nominativo.

CHAP. I.

Of Noun.

M. **H**ow is a Noun declined?

S. By Genders, Cases, and Numbers.

M. How many Genders are there?

S. Three; Masculine, Feminine and Neuter.

M. How many Cases are there?

S. Six; Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.

M. How many Numbers are there?

S. Two; Singular and Plural.

M. How many Declensions are there?

S. Five; First, Second, Third, Fourth, and Fifth.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Nouns of the Neuter Gender have the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative alike in both Numbers: And these Cases in the Plural end always in a.

2. The Vocative for the most part in the Singular, [and] always in the Plural, is like the Nominative.

3. Dativus & Ablativus Pluralis sunt similes.

3. The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike.

4. Nomina propria plerumque carent Plurali.

4. Proper Names for the most part want the Plural.

A **NOUN** is that Part of Speech which signifies the Name or Quality of a Thing ; as *Homo*, a Man ; *Bonus*, good.

A Noun is either *Substantive* or *Adjective*.

A *Substantive Noun* is, That which signifies the Name of a Thing ; as *Arbor*, a Tree ; *Virtus*, Virtue ; *Bonitas*, Goodness.

An *Adjective Noun* is, That which signifies an Accident, Quality, or Property of a Thing ; as *Albus*, white ; *Felix*, happy ; *Gravis*, heavy.

A Substantive may be distinguished from an Adjective these two ways :

1. A Substantive can stand in a Sentence without an Adjective, but an Adjective cannot without a Substantive ; as, I can say, *A Stone falls*, but I cannot say, *Heavy falls*. 2. If the Word *Thing* be joined with an Adjective, it will make Sense, but if it be joined with a Substantive, it will make Nonsense : Thus we say, *A good Thing*, *a white Thing* ; but we do not say, *A Man Thing*, *a Beast Thing*.

A Substantive Noun is divided into *Proper* and *Appellative*.

A *Proper Substantive* is, That which agrees to one particular Thing of a Kind ; as, *Virgilius*, a Man's Name ; *Penelope*, a Woman's Name ; *Scotia*, Scotland ; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh ; *Taus*, the Tay.

An *Appellative Substantive* is, That which is common to a whole Kind of Things ; as, *Vir*, a Man ; *Fœmina*, a Woman ; *Regnum*, a Kingdom ; *Urbs*, a City ; *Fluvius*, a River.

NOTE, That when a proper Name is applied to many, it becomes an Appellative, as *duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

GENDER in a natural Sense is the Distinction of Sex, or the Difference between Male and Female ; but in a Grammatical Sense, we commonly understand by it, the Fitness that a *Substantive Noun* hath to be joined to an *Adjective* of such a *Termination*, and not of another. Therefore,

Of Names of Animals, the *Hees* are of the Masculine, and the *Shees* of the Feminine Gender : But of Things without Life, and where the Diversity of Sex is not considered, even of Things that have Life, some are of the Masculine, others of the Feminine, and others of the Neuter Gender, according to the Use of the best Authors of the *Latin Tongue*.

Besides these three principal Genders there are reckoned also other three less principal, which are nothing else but Compounds of the three former, viz. the Gender *Common to two*, the Gender *Common to three*, and the *Doubtful Gender*.

I. The *Common Gender*, or Gender common to two, [*Genus commune* or *Commune duum*] is Masculine and Feminine ; and belongs to such Nouns as agree to both Sexes ; as, *Parens*, a Father or Mother ; *Bos*, an Ox or Cow.

II. The *Gender Common to three* [*Genus commune trium*] is Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter, and belongs only to Adjectives. Whereof some have three Terminations, the first Masculine, the second Feminine, and the third Neuter ; as, *Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good. Some have two, the first Masculine and Feminine, and the second Neuter ; as *Mollis*, *molle*, soft.

6 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

And some have but one Termination, which agrees indifferently to any of the three Genders ; as *Prudens*, wife.

III. The *Doubtful Gender* [*Genus dubium*] belongs to such Nouns as are found in good Authors sometimes in one Gender, and sometimes in another ; as, *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. *Vulgus*, the Rabble, Masc. or Neut.

[We have excepted out of the Number of Genders the Epicene or Promiscuous Gender ; for, properly speaking, there is no such Gender distinct from the three chief ones, or the doubtful. There are indeed Epicene Nouns, that is some Names of Animals, in which the Distinction of Sex is either not at all, or very obscurely considered ; and these are generally of the Gender of their Termination, as *Aquila*, an Eagle, Femin. because it ends in a ; *Passer*, a Sparrow, Mascul. because it ends in er. (See p. 8. and 11.) So *Homo*, a Man or Woman, Masc. *Mancipium*, a Slave, Neut. *Anguis*, a Serpent, Doubtful.]

To distinguish these Genders we make Use of these three Words, *Hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*, which are commonly, though improperly, called *Articles*. *Hic* is the Sign of the Masc. *hæc* of the Fem. *hoc* of the Neut. Gender ; *Hic* & *hæc* of the Common to two ; *hic*, *hæc*, *hoc* of the Common to three ; *hic aut hæc* ; *hic aut hoc*, &c. of the doubtful.

By *CASES* we understand the different Terminations that Nouns receive in declining : So called from *Cado* to fall, because they naturally fall or flow from the Nominative, which is therefore called *Casus rectus*, the straight Case ; as the other five are named *Obliqui*, crooked.

The *Singular NUMBER* denotes one single Thing ; as, *Homo*, a Man ; the *Plural* denotes more Things than one ; as, *Homines*, Men.

¶ Before the Learner proceeds to the Declension of Latin Nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a general View of

The Declension of English Nouns.

I. The *English Language* hath the two *Genders* of Nature, viz. Masculine and Feminine ; for Animals in it are called *HE* or *SHE*, according to the Difference of their Sex : And almost every Thing without Life is called *IT*. But because all the Adjectives of this Language are of one Termination, it has no occasion for any other Genders.

II. The *English*, properly speaking, has no Cases, because there is no Alteration made in the Words themselves, as in the Latin ; but instead thereof we use some little Words called *PARTICLES*.

Thus, the *Nominative Case* is the simple Noun itself : The Particle *OF* put before it, or *'s* after it makes the *Genitive* : *TO* or *FOR* before it makes the *Dative* : The *Accusative* is the same with the *Nominative* : The *Vocative* hath *O* before it : And the *Ablative* hath *WITH*, *FROM*, *IN*, *BY*, &c.

NOTE 1. That when a Substantive comes before a Verb, it is called the Nominative : when it follows after a Verb active, without a Preposition intervening, it is called the Accusative.

NOTE 2. That the Apostrophus or Sign [*'*] is not used in the Genitive Plural ; as, *Mens Works*, the *Apostles Creed*.

NOTE 3. That *TO* the Sign of the Dative, and *O* of the Vocative, are frequently omitted or understood.

Besides these there are other two little Words called *ARTICLES*, which

are con
Vowel
A o
A Ma
same v
No
doms,
of the
i. e. al
have
No
Plural
No
Artic
Defin
stood
III
comm
Ex
Sing
notic
Sing
ge, J
ceed
to a
with
Ver
thir
E
Calc
Gric
E
men
last
E
Lou
Sou
E
Chic
N
rath
Singular.

are commonly put before Substantive Nouns, viz. *A* [or *An* before a Vowel or *H*] called the *Indefinite Article*, and *THE* called the *Definite*.

A or *An* signifies as much as the Adjective *One*, and is put for it; as, *A Man*, that is, *One Man*. *The* is a Pronoun; and signifies almost the same with *This* or *That*, and *These* or *Those*.

NOTE 1. That proper Names of Men, Women, Towns, Kingdoms, and Appellatives, when used in a very general Sense, have none of these Articles; as, *Man is mortal*, i. e. every Man: *God abhors Sin*, i. e. all Sins: But proper Names of Rivers, Ships, Hills, &c. frequently have *The*; as, *the Thames*, *the Britannia*, *the Alps*.

NOTE 2. That the Vocative has none of these Articles, and the Plural wants the Indefinite.

NOTE 3. That when an Adjective is joined with a Substantive, the Article is put before both; as, *A good Man*, *the good Man*: And the Definite is put before the Adjective when the Substantive is understood; as, *The just shall live by Faith*, i. e. *The just Man*.

III. The *English* hath two Numbers, as the *Latin*, and the Plural is commonly made by putting an *s* to the Singular; as, *Book*, *Books*.

Exc. 1. Such as end in *ch*, *sh*, *ss*, and *x*, which have *es* added to their Singular; as, *Church-es*, *Brush-es*, *Witness-es*, *Box-es*. Where it is to be noticed that such Words have a Syllable more in the Plural than in the Singular Number. Which likewise happens to all Words ending in *ce*, *ge*, *se*, *ze*; as, *Faces*, *Ages*, *Houses*, *Mazes*. The Reason of this proceeds from the near approach these Terminations have in their Sound to an *s*, so that their Plural could not be distinguished from the Sing. without the Addition of another Syllable. And, for the same Reason, Verbs of these Terminations have a Syllable added to them in their third Person Sing. of the present Tense.

Exc. 2. Words that end in *f*, or *fe*, have their Plural in *ves*; as, *Calf*, *Calves*; *Leaf*, *Leaves*; *Wife*, *Wives*: But not always; for *Hoof*, *Roof*, *Grief*, *Mischief*, *Dwarf*, *Strife*, *Muff*, &c. retain *f*. *Staff* has *Staves*.

Exc. 3. Some have their Plural in *en*; as, *Man*, *Men*; *Woman*, *Women*; *Child*, *Children*; *Chick*, *Chicken*; *Brother*, *Brothers* or *Brethren* (which last is seldom used but in Sermons, or in a Burlesque Sense.)

Exc. 4. Some are more irregular; as, *Die*, *Dice*; *Moufe*, *Mice*; *Louse*, *Lice*; *Goose*, *Geese*; *Foot*, *Feet*; *Tooth*, *Teeth*; *Penny*, *Pence*; *Sow*, *Sows*, and *Swine*; *Cow*, *Cows*, and *Kine*.

Exc. 5. Some are the same in both Numbers; as, *Sheep*, *Hose*, *Swine*, *Chicken*, *Pease*, *Deer*; *Fish* and *Fishes*; *Mile*, and *Miles*; *Horse* and *Horses*.

NOTE. That as Nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, so these have rather *ies* than *ys* in the Plural; as, *Cherry*, *Cherries*.

An *English Noun* is thus declined.

A,		The		The	
Singular.	Nom.	King,	Plural.	Nom.	Kings,
	Gen. of	King,		Gen. of	Kings,
	Dat. to [for]	King,		Dat. to [for]	Kings,
	Acc.	King,		Acc.	Kings,
	Voc. O	King,		Voc. O	Kings,
	Abl. with, from, in, by,	King:		Abl. with, from, in, by,	Kings.

8 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Prima Declinatio.

The First Declension.

M. **Q**uomodo dignoscitur Prima Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dativum singularem in *a* Diphthongon.

M. Quot habet Terminati-
ones?

D. Quatuor; *a, e, as, es*; ut,
Penna, Penelope, Æneas, Anchises.

M. **H**OW is the First De-
clension known?

S. By the Genitive and Da-
tive Singular in *a* Diphthong.

M. How many Terminations
hath it?

S. Four; *a, e, as, es*; *as,*
Penna, Penelope, Æneas, Anchises.

Penna, a Pen, Fem.

Sing.	Plur.	Terminations.
Nom. <i>penna, a pen,</i>	Nom. <i>pennæ; pens,</i>	<i>a, æ,</i>
Gen. <i>pennæ, of a pen,</i>	Gen. <i>pennarum, of pens,</i>	<i>æ, arum,</i>
Dat. <i>pennæ, to a pen,</i>	Dat. <i>pennis, to pens,</i>	<i>æ, is,</i>
Acc. <i>pennam, a pen,</i>	Acc. <i>pennas, pens, iam, as,</i>	
Voc. <i>penna, O pen,</i>	Voc. <i>pennæ, O pens,</i>	<i>a, æ,</i>
Abl. <i>penna, with a pen:</i>	Abl. <i>pennis, with pens.</i>	<i>a: is.</i>

¶ After the same Manner you may decline, *Litera, a Letter*; *Via, a Way*; *Galea, an Helmet*; *Tunica, a Coat*; *Toga, a Gown.*

A is a Latin Termination, *e, as, and es,* are Greek.

Nouns in *a* and *e* are Feminine, in *as* and *es* Masculine.

RULE, *Filia, a Daughter*; *Nata, a Daughter*; *Dea, a Goddess*; *Animæ, the Soul*, with some others, have more frequently *abus* than *as* in their Dat. and Abl. Plur. to distinguish them from Masculines in *us* of the second Declension.

¶ In declining Greek Nouns observe the following Rules.

1. Greek Nouns in *as* [and *a*] have sometimes their Accusative [with the Poets] in *an*; *as, Æneas, Æneam vel Ænean*; [*Osia, Ossam, vel Ossan.*]

2. These in *es* have their Accusative in *en*, and their Vocative and Ablative in *e, as,*

Nom. *Anchises,*

Voc. *Anchise,*

Acc. *Anchisen,*

Abl. *Anchise.*

3. Nouns in *e* have their Genitive in *es*, their Accusative in *en*, their Dative, Vocative, and Ablative in *e*; *as,*

Nom. *Penelope,*

Dat. *Penelope,*

Voc. *Penelope,*

Abl. *Penelope.*

Gen. *Penelopes,*

Acc. *Penelopen,*

[As to the Dative of Words in *e*, I have followed Probus and Priscian, among the Ancients; Lilly, Alvarus, Vossius, Messieurs de Port Royal, Johnson, &c. among the Moderns. And though none of them cite any Example, yet I remember to have observed three such Datives, viz. *Cybele* in Virg. *Æn. XI.*

68. Penelope in Martial, Epig. XI. 8, 9. and Epigone in Reinesii Syntag. Inscript. Class. 14. Num. 85. But Diomedes and Despauter seem to be of Opinion, that these Nouns have æ in their Dative. The Reason that moved the former is, because they thought it incongruous, that seeing No uns generally follow the Greek in all their other Cases, they should follow the Latin in their Dative only, especially since their Ablative, which answers to the Greek Dative, ends in e. As, on the contrary, they maintain, that if such Nouns have æ in their Dative, it must come from a Nominative in a; of which there are some Examples yet extant: And then they may likewise have their Accusative in am; as Penelopam, Circam, in Plautus, Lycambam in Terentianus Maurus. Thus Helenæ or Helenes, Helenam or Helenen, are frequently to be met with in Poets; who also turn such Words as commonly end in a, into e in the Nominative and Vocative, when the Measure of their Verse requires it. And here it may not be improper to remark, that even Greek Words in es have sometimes their Nominative and Vocative in a, (whence comes their Genitive and Dative in æ:) And, if Mr. Johnson's Citations are right, both es and e have sometimes their Accusative in em.]

Secunda Declinatio.

The second Declension.

M. Q Uomodo dignoscitur Secunda Declinatio?

M. H OW is the Second Declension known?

D. Per Genitivum singularem in i, & Dativum in o.

S. By the Genitive Singular in i, and Dative in o.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

M. How many Terminations hath it?

D. Septem; er, ir, ur, us, m, os, on; ut,

S. Seven; er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on; as,

Gener, a Son-in-law; Vir, a Man; Satur, full; Dominus, Lord; Regnum, a Kingdom; Synodos, a Synod; Albion, the Island Albion, or Great Britain.

Gener, a Son-in-law, Masc.

	Sing.	Plur.	Terminations.
Nom.	gener,	Nom. generi,	er, ir, us, i,
Gen.	generi,	Gen. generorum,	i, orum,
Dat.	genero,	Dat. generis,	o, is,
Acc.	generum,	Acc. generos,	um, os,
Voc.	gener,	Voc. generi,	er, ir, e, i,
Abl.	genero:	Abl. generis.	o: is.

After the same manner you may decline Puer, a Boy; Socer, a Father-in law: Vir, a Man, &c. But Liber, a Book; Magister, a Matter; Alexander, a Man's Name; and most other Substantives in er, lose the before r; Thus, Sing. Nom. Liber, Gen. libri, Dat. libro, Acc. librum, Voc. liber, Abl. libro: Plur. Nom. libri, Gen. librorum, &c.

Dominus, a Lord, Masc.

Sing.	Plur.	Thus,
Nom. dominus,	Nom. domini,	Ventus, the Wind.
Gen. domini,	Gen. dominorum,	Oculus, the Eye.
Dat. domino,	Dat. dominis,	Fluvius, a River.
Acc. dominum,	Acc. dominos,	Puteus, a Well.
Voc. domine,	Voc. domini,	Focus, a common Fire.
Abl. domino:	Abl. dominis.	Rogus, a funeral Pile.

Regnum, a Kingdom, Neut.

Sing.	Plur.	Thus,
Nom. regnum,	Nom. regna,	Templum, a Church.
Gen. regni,	Gen. regnorum,	Ingenium, Wit.
Dat. regno,	Dat. regnis,	Horreum, a Barn.
Acc. regnum,	Acc. regna,	Canticum, a Song.
Voc. regnum,	Voc. regna,	Jugum, a Yoke.
Abl. regno:	Abl. regnis.	

R E G U L Æ.

I. Nominativus in *us* facit Vocativum in *e*: ut, *Ventus, vente.*

II. Propria in *ius* perdunt *us* in Vocativo; ut, *Georgius, Georgi.*

Filius hath also *fili*, and *Deus* hath *Deus* in the Vocative, and in the Plural more frequently *Dii* and *Diis*, than *Dei* and *Deis*.

R U L E S.

I. The Nominative in *us* makes the Vocative in *e*; as, *Ventus, vente.*

II. Proper Names in *ius* lose *us* in the Vocative; as, *Georgius, Georgi.*

The most common Terminations of the Second Declension are *us* and *us* of the Masc. and *um* of the Neut. Gender.

There is only one Noun in *ir* of this Declension, viz. *Vir*, a Man, with its Compounds, *Levir*, *Duuvir*, *Triuvir*, &c. and only one in *ur*, viz. *Satur*, full, (of old *Saturus*) an Adjective. *Os* and *on* are Greek Terminations, and generally changed into *us* and *um* in their Nominative. These, with other Greek Nouns in *us*, have sometimes their Acc. in *on*.

[We have excluded the Termination *eus* from this Declension, as belonging more properly to the Third; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*, *Orphei*, *Orpheæ*, *Orpheu*: For when it is of the Second Declension, it is *e-us*, of two Syllables, and so falls under the Termination *us*; *Orphe-us*, *Orphe-i* (contracted *Orphei* and *Orphi*) *Orphe-o*, *Orphe-um*, (or *Orphe-on*) *Orphe-o*.]

Tertia Declinatio.

The Third Declension.

M. **Q**uomodo dignoscitur Tertia Declinatio?

M. **H**OW is the Third Declension known?

Part II. Chap. I. of NOUN. 11

D. Per Genitivum singula-
rem in *is*, & Dativum in *i*.

M. Quot habet Terminatio-
nes seu Syllabas finales?

D. Septuaginta & unam.

M. Quot habet literas fina-
les?

D. Undecim; *a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*; ut,

Diadema, a Crown; *Sedile*, a Seat; *Sermo*, a Speech; *Lac*, Milk; *David*, a Man's Name; *Animal*, a living Creature; *Pecten*, a Comb; *Pater*, a Father; *Rupes*, a Rock; *Caput*, the Head; *Rex*, a King.

Sermo, Speech, Masc.

Sing.

Plur.

Terminations.

<i>Nom.</i> sermo,	<i>Nom.</i> sermones,	<i>a, e, o, &c.</i>	<i>es, a,</i>
<i>Gen.</i> sermonis,	<i>Gen.</i> sermonum,	<i>is,</i>	<i>um, ium,</i>
<i>Dat.</i> sermoni,	<i>Dat.</i> sermonibus,	<i>i,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> sermonem,	<i>Acc.</i> sermones,	<i>em,</i>	<i>es, a,</i>
<i>Voc.</i> sermo,	<i>Voc.</i> sermones,	<i>a, e, o, &c.</i>	<i>es, a,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> fermone:	<i>Abl.</i> sermonibus.	<i>e, i:</i>	<i>ibus.</i>

Sedile, a Seat, Neut.

Sing.

Plur.

<i>Nom.</i> sedile,	<i>Nom.</i> sedilia,	As <i>Sermo</i> , so most Substantives of this Declension in <i>a, o, c, d, n, t, x,</i> <i>er, or, ur, as, os, us</i> ; (except their <i>Acc.</i> and <i>Voc.</i> when they are Neuters, or when they want the Plural Num- ber.) Also (when they have more Syl- lables in their <i>Gen.</i> than <i>Nom.</i>) all Words in <i>es</i> , and most of those in <i>is</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> sedilis,	<i>Gen.</i> sedilium,	
<i>Dat.</i> sedili,	<i>Dat.</i> sedilibus,	
<i>Acc.</i> sedile,	<i>Acc.</i> sedilia,	
<i>Voc.</i> sedile,	<i>Voc.</i> sedilia,	
<i>Abl.</i> sedili:	<i>Abl.</i> sedilibus.	

Of the final Letters of the third Declension six are peculiar to it, *o, c, d, l, t, x*; the other five are common to other Declensions, viz. *a, e, n, r, s*.

The copious final Letters are, *o, n, r, s, x*.

The copious final Syllables are, *io, do, go, en, er, or, as, es, is, os, us, us, rs, ex*.

All Nouns in *a* of this Declension are originally Greek, and have al-
ways an *m* before it. There are only two Words in *c*; *Lac*, Milk;
and *Hales*, a Herring. Words in *d* are proper Names of Men, and very
rare. There are only three Words in *t*. viz. *Caput*, the Head; *Siuci-
put*, the Forehead; *Occiput*, the Hind-head.

1. The Terminations *er, or, os, o, on*,

2. The Terminations, *io, do, go, as, es, is, ys,*
aus, x, and *s* after a Consonant,

3. The Terminations *a, c, e, l, men, ar, ur, us, ut*,

But from these there are many Exceptions,

are { Masculine.
Feminine.
Neuter.

NOTE 1. That for the most part the Genitive hath a Syllable more than the Nominative ; and where it is otherwise they generally end in *e*, *es* or *is*.

NOTE 2. That whatever Letter or Syllable comes before *is* in the Gen. must run through the other Cases (except the Acc. and Voc. Sing. of Neuters ; as, *Thema*, -*atis*, -*ati*, -*ate*, a Theme : *Sanguis*, -*guinis*, Blood ; *Iter*, -*iteris*, a Journey : *Carmen*, -*minis*, a Verse ; *Judex*, -*dicis*, a Judge.

R E G U L Æ.

1. Nomina in *e*, & Neutra in *al* & *ar*, habent *i* in Ablativo.

2. Quæ habent *e* tantum in Ablativo, faciunt Genitivum pluralem in *um*.

3. Quæ habent *i* tantum, vel *e* aut *i* simul, faciunt *ium*.

4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in Ablativo singulari, habent *a* in Nominativo, Accusativo, & Vocativo plurali.

5. At quæ habent *i* in Ablativo, faciunt *ia*.

R U L E S.

1. Nouns in *e*, and Neuters in *al* and *ar*, have *i* in the Ablative.

2. These which have *e* only in the Ablative, make their Genitive plural in *um*.

3. These which have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make *ium*.

4. Neuters which have *e* in their Ablative sing. have *a* in the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative plural.

5. But these which have *i* in the Ablative, make *ia*.

1. EXCEPTIONS in the Accusative singular.

1. Some Nouns in *is* have *im* in the Accusative ; as *Vis*, *vim*, Strength ; *Tussis*, the Cough ; *Sitis*, Thirst ; *Buris*, the Beam of a Plough ; *Ravis*, Hoarseness ; *Amussis*, a Mason's Rule. To which add Names of Rivers in *is* ; as, *Tybris*, *Thamesis*, which the Poets sometimes, make in *in*.

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *im* ; as, *Navis*, a Ship ; *Puppis*, the Stern ; *Securis*, an Ax ; *Clavis*, a Key ; *Febris*, a Fever ; *Pelvis*, a Basin ; *Rofis*, a Rope ; *Turris*, a Tower ; *Navem* vel *navim*, &c.

2. EXCEPTIONS in the Ablative singular.

1. Nouns which have *im* in the Accusative have *i* in the Ablative ; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*, &c. These that have *em* or *im* have *e* or *i* ; as, *Navis*, *navem* vel *navim*, *nave* vel *navi*.

2. *Canalis*, *Vestis*, *Bipennis*, have *i* : *Avis*, *Annis*, *Ignis*, *Unguis*, *Rus*, and *Imber*, with some others, have *e* or *i* ; but most commonly *e*.

These Neuters in *ar* have *e* ; *Far*, *Jubar*, *Nectar*, and *Hepar* : *Sale* also has *sale*.

3. EXCEPTIONS in the Genitive plural.

1. Nouns of one Syllable in *as*, *is*, and *s* with a Consonant before it, have *ium* ; as *As*, *assium*, *Lis*, *Litium* ; *Urbs*, *urbium*.

2. Also Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing in their Genitive ; as, *Vallis*, *vallium* ; *Rupes*, *rupium*. Except, *Panis*, *Causis*, *Vates*, and *Volucris*.

3. To which add *Care*, *Cor*, *Cos*, *Dos*, *Mus*, *Nix*, *Nox*, *Linter*, *Sal*, *Os*, *offis*.

NOTE, That when the Genitive Plural ends in *ium*, the Accusative frequently, instead of *es*, has *eis* or *is* ; as, *omnibus*, *partibus*, or *emnis*, *partibus*, for *omnes*, *partes*.

Of Greek Nouns.

I. Greek Nouns have sometimes their Genitive in *os*. And these are, 1. Such as increase their Genitive with *d*; as, *Arcas*, *Arcadis* vel *Arcados*, an Arcadian; *Briseis*, *-eidis* vel *-eidos*, a Woman's Name, 2. Such as increase in *os* pure, i. e. with a Vowel before it: *Herefis*, *-eos* vel *-ios*, an Herefy. To these add *Sphynchos*, *Strymonos* and *Panos*.

NOTE. That *is* is more frequent, except in the second Kind, and Patronymicks of the first.

II. 1. Greek Words which increase their Genitive in *is* or *os* not pure, (i. e. with a Consonant before it) have frequently their Accusative sing. in *a*, and plur. in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, *lampada*, *lampadas*; also *Mimos*, *Minois*, *Minoa*; *Tros*, *Tröis*, *Troa*, *Troas*; *Heros*, *herois*, *heroa*, *heroas*.

2. Words in *is* or *ys*, whose Genitive ends in *os* pure, have their Accusative in *im* or *in*, and *ym* or *yn*; as, *Herefis*, *-eos*, *heresim* or *-in*, *Chelys*, *-lyos*, a Lute; *chelym* or *-lyn*. Of Words in *is*, which have their Genitive in *dis* or *dos*, Masculines have their Accusative for the most part in *im* or *in*, seldom in *dem*, and never in *da*, that I know of: as, *Paris*, *Parim* vel *Parin*, vel *Paridem*; Feminines have most commonly *dem* or *da*, and seldom *im* or *in*; as, *Briseis*, *Briseidem* vel *Briseida*.

III. Feminines in *o* have *us* in their Genitive, and *o* in their other Cases, as, *Dido*, *Didus*, *Dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin Form, *Didonis*, *Didoni*, &c. which *Juno* (as being of a Latin Original) always follows.

IV. Greek Nouns in *s* frequently throw away *s* in their Vocative; as *Calchas*, *Achilles*, *Paris*, *Tiphys*, *Orpheus*; *Calcha*, *Achille*, *Pari*, *Tiphy*, *Orpheu*.

V. Greek Nouns have *um*, (and sometimes *on* in their Genitive Plural; as, *Epigrammatön*, *Herefeön*) and very rarely *ium*.

VI. Greek Nouns in *ma* have most frequently *is* in their Dative and Ablative plural; as, *Poëma*, *Poëmatis*, because of old they said *Poëmatum*, *-ti*, *Bos* has *Boum*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

Quarta Declinatio.

The fourth Declension.

M. **Q**uomodo dignoscitur Quarta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum singularem in *us*, & Dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Duas; *us* & *u*; ut,

Fructus, *Fruit*; *Cornu*, *a Horn*.

Fructus, *Fruit*, Masc.

M. **H**OW is the Fourth Declension known?

S. By the Genitive Singular in *us*, and the Dative in *ui*.

M. How many Terminations hath it?

S. Two; *us* and *u*; as,

Terminations.

Sing.		Plur.		Terminations.	
Nom.	fructus,	Nom.	fructus,	<i>us</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,
Gen.	fructus,	Gen.	fructuum,	<i>us</i> ,	<i>uum</i> ,
Dat.	fructui,	Dat.	fructibus,	<i>ui</i> ,	<i>ibus</i> ,
Acc.	fructum,	Acc.	fructus,	<i>um</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,
Voc.	fructus,	Voc.	fructus,	<i>us</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,
Abl.	fructu:	Abl.	fructibus.	<i>u</i> :	<i>ibus</i> .

NOTE 1. That for the most part the Genitive hath a Syllable more than the Nominative ; and where it is otherwise they generally end in *e*, *es* or *is*.

NOTE 2. That whatever Letter or Syllable comes before *is* in the Gen. must run through the other Cases (except the Acc. and Voc. Sing. of Neuters ; as, *Themu*, -*atis*, -*ati*, -*ate*, a Theme : *Sanguis*, -*guinis*, Blood ; *Iter*, -*itineris*, a Journey : *Carmen*, -*minis*, a Verse ; *Judex*, -*dicis*, a Judge.

R E G U L Æ.

1. Nomina in *e*, & Neutra in *al* & *ar*, habent *i* in Ablativo.

2. Quæ habent *e* tantum in Ablativo, faciunt Genitivum pluralem in *um*.

3. Quæ habent *i* tantum, vel *e* aut *i* simul, faciunt *ium*.

4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in Ablativo singulari, habent *a* in Nominativo, Accusativo, & Vocativo plurali.

5. At quæ habent *i* in Ablativo, faciunt *ia*.

R U L E S.

1. Nouns in *e*, and Neuters in *al* and *ar*, have *i* in the Ablative.

2. These which have *e* only in the Ablative, make their Genitive plural in *um*.

3. These which have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make *ium*.

4. Neuters which have *e* in their Ablative sing. have *a* in the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative plural.

5. But these which have *i* in the Ablative, make *ia*.

1. EXCEPTIONS in the Accusative singular.

1. Some Nouns in *is* have *im* in the Accusative ; as *Vis*, *vim*, Strength ; *Tussis*, the Cough ; *Sitis*, Thirst ; *Buris*, the Beam of a Plough ; *Ravis*, Hoarseness ; *Amussis*, a Mason's Rule. To which add Names of Rivers in *is* ; as, *Tybris*, *Thamesis*, which the Poets sometimes, make in *in*.

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *im* ; as, *Navis*, a Ship ; *Puppis*, the Stern ; *Securis*, an Ax ; *Clavis*, a Key ; *Febris*, a Fever ; *Pelvis*, a Basin ; *Raffis*, a Rope ; *Turris*, a Tower ; *Navem* vel *navim*, &c.

2. EXCEPTIONS in the Ablative singular.

1. Nouns which have *im* in the Accusative have *i* in the Ablative ; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*, &c. These that have *em* or *im* have *e* or *i* ; as, *Navis*, *navem* vel *navim*, *nave* vel *navi*.

2. *Canalis*, *Vestis*, *Bipennis*, have *i* : *Avis*, *Annis*, *Ignis*, *Unguis*, *Rus*, and *Imber*, with some others, have *e* or *i* ; but most commonly *e*.

These Neuters in *ar* have *e* ; *Far*, *Jubar*, *Nectar*, and *Hepar* : *Sale* also has *sale*.

3. EXCEPTIONS in the Genitive plural.

1. Nouns of one Syllable in *as*, *is*, and *s* with a Consonant before it, have *ium* ; as *As*, *assium*, *Lis*, *Litium* ; *Urbs*, *urbium*.

2. Also Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing in their Genitive ; as, *Vallis*, *vallium* ; *Rupes*, *rupium*. Except, *Panis*, *Causis*, *Vates*, and *Volucris*.

3. To which add *Care*, *Cor*, *Cos*, *Dos*, *Mus*, *Nix*, *Nox*, *Linter*, *Sal*, *Os*, *offis*.

NOTE, That when the Genitive Plural ends in *ium*, the Accusative frequently, instead of *es*, has *eis* or *is* ; as, *omneis*, *parteis*, or *emneis*, *partis*, for *omnes*, *partes*.

Of Greek Nouns.

I. Greek Nouns have sometimes their Genitive in *os*. And these are,
1. Such as increase their Genitive with *d*; as, *Arcas*, *Arcadis* vel *Ar-
cados*, an Arcadian; *Briseis*, *-eidis* vel *-eidos*, a Woman's Name, 2. Such
as increase in *os* pure, i. e. with a Vowel before it: *Herefis*, *-eos* vel *-ios*,
an Herefy. To these add *Sphynchos*, *Strymonos* and *Panos*.

NOTE. That *is* is more frequent, except in the second Kind, and Pa-
tronymicks of the first.

II. 1. Greek Words which increase their Genitive in *is* or *os* not pure,
(i. e. with a Consonant before it) have frequently their Accusative sing.
in *a*, and plur. in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, *lampada*, *lampadas*; also *Mi-
nos*, *Minois*, *Minoa*; *Tros*, *Trois*, *Troa*, *Troas*; *Heros*, *herois*, *heroa*, *heroas*.

2. Words in *is* or *ys*, whose Genitive ends in *os* pure, have their Ac-
cusative in *im* or *in*, and *ym* or *yn*; as, *Herefis*, *-eos*, *herefim* or *-in*,
Chelys, *-lys*, a Lute; *chelym* or *-lyn*. Of Words in *is*, which have their
Genitive in *dis* or *dos*, Masculines have their Accusative for the most part
in *im* or *in*, seldom in *dem*, and never in *da*, that I know of: as, *Paris*,
Parim vel *Parin*, vel *Paridem*; Feminines have most commonly *dem* or
da, and seldom *im* or *in*; as, *Briseis*, *Briseidem* vel *Briseida*.

III. Feminines in *o* have *us* in their Genitive, and *o* in their other Cases,
as, *Dido*, *Didus*, *Dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin Form, *Di-
donis*, *Didoni*, &c. which *Juno* (as being of a Latin Original) always follows.

IV. Greek Nouns in *s* frequently throw away *s* in their Vocative; as
Calchas, *Achilles*, *Paris*, *Tiphys*, *Orpheus*; *Calcha*, *Achille*, *Pari*, *Tiphy*, *Orpheu*.

V. Greek Nouns have *um*, (and sometimes *on* in their Genitive Plural;
as, *Epigrammaton*, *Herefeon*) and very rarely *ium*.

VI. Greek Nouns in *ma* have most frequently *is* in their Dative and
Ablative plural; as, *Poëma*, *Poëmatis*, because of old they said *Poëmatum*,
-ti, *Bos* has *Boum*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

Quarta Declinatio.

The fourth Declension.

M. **Q**uomodo dignoscitur
Quarta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum singula-
rem in *us*, & Dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet Terminatio-
nes?

D. Duas; *us* & *u*; ut,

Fructus, *Fruit*; *Cornu*, a Horn.

Fructus, *Fruit*, Masc.

Sing. {
Nom. *fructus*,
Gen. *fructus*,
Dat. *fructui*,
Acc. *fructum*,
Voc. *fructus*,
Abl. *fructu*:

Plur. {
Nom. *fructus*,
Gen. *fructuum*,
Dat. *fructibus*,
Acc. *fructus*,
Voc. *fructus*,
Abl. *fructibus*.

M. **H**OW is the Fourth De-
clension known?

S. By the Genitive Singular
in *us*, and the Dative in *ui*.

M. How many Terminations
hath it?

S. Two; *us* and *u*; as,

Terminations.

us, *us*,
us, *uum*,
ui, *ibus*,
um, *us*,
us, *us*,
u: *ibus*.

Cornu, a Horn, Neut.

Sing.	Nom. cornu,	Plur.	Nom. cornua,	As Fructus, so Val- tus, the Countenance; Ma- nus, the Hand, Fem. Ca- sus, a Fall or Chance. As Cornu, so Genu, the Knee; Veru, a Spit; Tonitru, Thunder.
	Gen. cornu,		Gen. cornuum,	
	Dat. cornu,		Dat. cornibus,	
	Acc. cornu,		Acc. cornua,	
	Voc. cornu,		Voc. cornua,	
	Abl. cornu :		Abl. cornibus.	

Nouns in *us* of this Declension are generally Masculine, and these in *u* all Neuter, and indeclinable in the singular Number.

RULE, Some Nouns have *ubus* in their Dative and Ablative plural, viz. *Arcus*, a Bow; *Artus*, a Joint; *Lacus*, a Lake; *Acus*, a Needle; *Portus*, a Port or Harbour; *Partus*, a Birth; *Tribus*, a Tribe; *Veru*, a Spit.

NOTE, That of old, Nouns of this Declension belonged to the Third and were declined as *Grus*, *gruis*, a Crane; thus, *Fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructue*; *Fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructuibus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructui- bus*. So that all the Cases are contracted, except the Dative sing. and Genitive plur. There are some Examples of the Genitive in *uis* yet extant; as, on the contrary, there are several of the Dative in *u*.

The blessed Name *IE-
sus* is thus declined,

Domus, an House, Fem. is thus declined;

Sing.	Nom. IESUS,	Plur. wanting	Nom. domus,	Nom. domus,
	Gen. IESU,		Gen. domus, v.-mi,	Gen. domorum, v.-uum,
	Dat. IESU,		Dat. domui, v.-mo,	Dat. domibus,
	Acc. IESUM,		Acc. domum,	Acc. domos, v.-us,
	Voc. IESU,		Voc. domus,	Voc. domus,
	Abl. IESU.		Abl. domo :	Abl. domibus.

[NOTE, That the Genitive *domi* is only used when it signifies, At home; *domo* the Dative is found in Horace, *Epist.* I, 10, 13.]

Quinta Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoscitur Quinta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dativum singularem in *ei*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Unam, nempe, *es*; ut, *Res*, a Thing, Fem.

Sing.	Nom. res,	Plur.	Nom. res,
	Gen. rei,		Gen. rerum,
	Dat. rei,		Dat. rebus,
	Acc. rem,		Acc. res,
	Voc. res,		Voc. res.
	Abl. re :		Abl. rebus.

The Fifth Declension.

M. HOW is the Fifth Declension known?

S. By the Genitive and Dative Singular in *ei*.

M. How many Terminations hath it?

S. One, namely, *es*; as, Terminations.

<i>es</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>ei</i> ,	<i>erum</i> ,
<i>ei</i> ,	<i>ebus</i> ,
<i>em</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>es</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>e :</i>	<i>ebus</i> .

Nouns of the Fifth Declension are not above fifty, and are all Feminine, except *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. and *Meridies*, the Mid-day or Noon, Masc.

All Nouns of this Declension end in *ies*, except three, *Fides*, Faith; *Spes*, Hope; *Res*, a Thing.

And all Nouns in *ies* are of the Fifth, except these four; *Abies*, a Fir-tree; *Aries*, a Ram; *Paries*, a Wall; and *Quies*, Rest; which are of the third

Most Nouns of this Declension want the Genitive, Dative and Ablative plural, and many of them want the plural altogether.

General Remarks on all the Declensions.

1. The Genitive Plural of the first four is sometimes contracted, especially by Poets; as, *Cœlicolam*, *Deum*, *Mensum*, *Cursum*; for *Cœlicolarum*, *Deorum*, *Mensurum*, *Curruum*.

2. When the Genitive of the Second ends in *ii*, the last *i* is sometimes taken away by Poets; as, *Tugurî* for *Tugurii*. We read also *Aulai* for *Aulae* in the First, and *Fide*, for *fidei* in the Fifth; and so of other like Words.

Declinatio Adjectivorum.

Adjectiva sunt vel primæ & secundæ Declinationis, vel tertiæ tantum.

Omnia Adjectiva habentia tres Terminationes (præter (a) undecim) sunt primæ & secundæ: At quæ unam vel duas Terminationes habent, sunt tertiæ.

Adjectiva primæ & secundæ habent Masculinum in *us*, (b) vel *er*; Fœmininum semper in *a*, Neutrum semper in *um*; ut,

Bonus, *bona*, *bonum*, good; *Tener*, *tenera*, *tenerum*, tender.

Bonus, *bona*, *bonum*, good.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. bon-us, -a; -um,
Gen. bon-i, -æ, -i,
Dat. bon-o, -æ, -o,
Acc. bon-um, -am, -um,
Voc. bon-e, -a, -um,
Abl. bon-o, -a, -o:

Nom. bon-i, -æ -a,
Gen. bon-orum, -arum, -orum,
Dat. bon-is, -is, -is,
Acc. bon-os, -as, -a,
Voc. bon-i, -æ, -a,
Abl. bon-is, -is, -is.

(a) Viz. *acer*, *alacer*, *celer*, *celeber*, *saluber*, *volucer*, *campester*, *equester*, *pedester*, *paluster*, *silvester*; which are of the Third, and have their Masculine in *er* or *is*, their Feminine in *is*. and Neuter in *e*.

(b) For *satur*, full, was of old, *saturus*.

The Declension of Adjectives.

Adjectives are either of the First and Second Declension, or of the Third only.

All Adjectives having three Terminations (except (a) eleven) are of the First and Second: But these which have one or two Terminations are of the Third.

Adjectives of the First and Second have their Masculine in *us*, (b) or *er*; their Feminine always in *a*, and their Neuter always in *um*; as,

Tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.

Sing.

Plur.

N. ten-er,	-era, -erum,	N. ten-eri,	-eræ, -era,
G. ten-eri,	-eræ, -eri,	G. ten-erorum,	-erarum, -erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ, -ero,	D. ten-eris,	-eris, -eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram, -erum,	A. ten-eros,	-eras, -era,
V. ten-er,	-era, -erum,	V. ten-eri,	-eræ, -era,
A. ten-ero,	-era, -ero :	A. ten-eris,	-eris, -eris.

Adjectives are declined as three Substantives of the same Terminations and Declensions: As in the Examples above, *bonus*, like *dominus*; *tener*, like *gener*; *bona* and *tenera* like *penna*; *bonum* and *tenerum*, like *regnum*. Therefore the Ancients, as is clear from *Varro*, lib. 3. *de Anal.* declined every Gender separately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do: And perhaps it may not be amiss to follow this Method at first, especially if the Boy is of a slow Capacity.

Of Adjectives in *er*, some retain the *e*, as *tener*. So *miser*, -era, -erum, wretched; *liber*, -era, -erum, free; and all Compounds in *ger* and *fer*. Others lose it; as, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, fair; *niger*, -gra, -grum, black.

These following Adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *solus*, alone; *ul- lus*, any; *nullus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another, or one of two; *neuter*, neither; *uter*, whether, with its Compounds, *uterque*, both; *uterlibet*, *uteruis*, which of the two you please; *alteruter*, the one or the other; have their Genitive singular in *ius* and Dative in *i*.

Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis.

Adjectives of the third Declension.

1. Unius Terminationis.

1. Of one Termination.

Felix, happy.

Sing.

Plur.

N. fel-ix,	-ix, -ix,	N. fel-ices,	-ices, -icia,
G. fel-icis,	-icis, -icis,	G. fel-icium,	-icium, -icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici, -ici,	D. fel-icibus,	-icibus, -icibus,
A. fel-icem,	-icem, -ix,	A. fel-ices,	-ices, -icia,
V. fel-ix,	-ix, -ix,	V. fel-ices,	-ices, -icia,
A. fel-ice, vel -ici, &c.		A. fel-icibus,	-icibus, -icibus.

2. Duarum Terminationum.

2. Of two Terminations.

Mitis, mite, meek.

Sing.

Plur.

N. mitis,	mitis, mite,	N. mites,	mites, mitia,
G. mitis,	mitis, mitis,	G. mitium,	mitium, mitium,
D. miti,	miti, miti,	D. mitibus,	mitibus, mitibus,
A. mitem,	mitem, mite,	A. mites,	mites, mitia,
V. mitis,	mitis, mite,	V. mites,	mites, mitia,
A. miti,	miti, miti:	A. mitibus,	mitibus, mitibus.

Mitior, mitius, meeker.

Sing.

Plur.

N. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	N. miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
G. miti-oris,	-oris,	-oris,	G. miti-orum,	-orum,	-orum,
D. miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	D. miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus,
A. miti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	A. miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
V. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	V. miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
A. miti-ore, vel -ori, &c.			A. miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus.

3. Trium Terminationum.

3. Of three Terminations.

Acer vel acris, acris, acre, Sharp.

Sing.

Plur.

N. a-cer vel -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	N. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
G. a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	G. a-crium,	-crium,	-crium,
D. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	D. a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,
A. a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	A. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
V. a-cer vel -cris,	-cris,	cre,	V. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
A. a-cri,	-cri:	-cri	A. a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.

R E G U L Æ.

R U L E S.

1. Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis habent *e* vel *i* in Ablativo singulari.

1. Adjectives of the Third Declension have *e* or *i* in the Ablative singular.

2. At si Neutrum sit in *e*, Ablativus habet *i* tantum.

2. But if the Neuter be in *e*, the Ablative has *i* only.

3. Genitivus pluralis definit in *ium*; & neutrum Nominativi, Accusativi et Vocativi, in *ia*.

3. The Genitive plural ends in *ium*; and the Neuter of the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative in *ia*.

4. Excipe Comparativa, quæ *um* & *a* postulant.

4. Except Comparatives, which require *um* and *a*.

E X C E P T I O N S.

1. Dives, Hospes, Sospes, Superstes, Juvenis, Senex, and Pauper, have *e* in the Ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the Genitive plural.

2. Compos, Impos, Consors, Inops, Vigil, Supplex, Uber, Degener, and Puber; also Compounds ending in *ceps*, *fex*, *pes*, and *corpor*; as, Princeps, Artifex, Bipes, Tricorper, have *um*, not *ium*.

NOTE, That all these have seldom the Neut. sing. and never almost the Neut. plur. in the Nom. and Acc. To which add Memor, which has *memori* and *memorum*; and Locuples, which has *locupletium*; also, Deses, Refes, Hebes, Perpes, Prapes, Teres, Concolor, Versicolor; which being hardly to be met with in the Genitive plur. 'tis a Doubt whether they should have *um* or *ium*, though I incline most to the former.

18 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

3. *Par* has *pari*; *vetus, vetera & veterum*; *Plus*, (which hath only the Neut. in the sing.) has *plure*, and *plures, plura* (or *pluria*) *plurium*.

NOTE, 1. That Comparatives and Adjectives in *ns*, have more frequently *e* than *i*, and Participles in the Ablatives called *Absolute* have generally *e*; as, *Carolo regnante*, not *regnanti*.

NOTE, 2. That Adjectives joined with Substantives Neuter, hardly ever have *e* but *i*; as, *victricis ferro*, not *victrice*.

NOTE, 3. That Adjectives when they are put substantively, have oft-times *e*; as, *Affinis, Familiaris, Rivalis, Sodalis, &c.* So *Par*, a Match; as, *Cum pare quæque suo cœunt*. Ovid.

Of NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. **T**HE Ordinal and Multiplicative Numbers (see Chap. IX) are regularly declined. The Distributive wants the Singular, as also doth the Cardinal, except *Unus*, which is declined as in p. 16. and hath the Plural, when joined with a Substantive that wanteth the Sing. as *Una litteræ*, one Letter; *Una mœnia*, one Wall; or when several Particulars are considered complexly as making one Compound; as, *Uni sex dies*, i. e. One Space of six Days; *Una vestimenta*, i. e. One Suit of Apparel, *Plaut.*

Duo and *tres* are declined after this Manner:

Plur.	Nom. duo,	duæ,	duo,	Plur.	Nom. tres,	tres,	tria,
	Gen. duorum,	duarum,	duorum,		Gen. trium,	trium,	trium,
	Dat. duobus,	duabus,	duobus,		Dat. tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
	Acc. duos vel-o,	duas,	duo,		Acc. tres,	tres,	tria,
	Voc. duo,	duæ,	duo,		Voc. tres,	tres,	tria,
	Abl. duobus,	duabus,	duobus.		Abl. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

Ambo, Both, is declined as *Duo*.

2. From *Quatuor* to *Centum* are all indeclinable.

3. From *Centum* to *Mille* they are declined thus, *Ducenti, ducenta, ducenta*; *ducentorum, ducentarum, ducentorum, &c.*

4. As to *Mille*, *Varro*, and all the Grammarians after him, down to the last Age, make it (when it is put before a Gen. plur.) a Substantive indeclinable in the Sing. and in the Plur. declined, *Millia, millium, millibus*; but when it hath a Substantive joined to it in any other Case, they make it an Adjective plural indeclinable. But *Scioppius*, and after him *Gronovius*, contend that *Mille* is always an Adjective plural; and under that Termination of all Cases and Genders; but that it hath two Neuters, *hec Mille*, and *hec Millia*, that the first is used when one thousand is signified, and the second when more than one. And that where it seems to be a Substantive governing a Gen. *Multitudo, Numerus, Manus, Pecunia, Ponderus, Spatium, Corpus*, or the like, are understood. I own that formerly I was of this Sentiment; but now the weighty Reasons adduced by the most accurate *Perizonius* incline me rather to follow the ancient Grammarians.

After the Declension of Substantives and Adjectives separately, it may not be improper to exercise the Learner with some Examples of a Substantive and Adjective declined together; which will both make him more ready in the Declensions, and render the Dependence of the Adjective upon the Substantive more familiar to him. Let the Examples at first be of the same Terminations and Declensions; as, *Domini justus*, a just Lord; *Penna bona*, a good Pen; *Ingenium eximium*, an excellent Wit. Afterwards let them be different in one or both; as, *Puer probus*, a good Boy; *Lectio facilis*, an easy Lesson; *Poeta optimus*, an excellent Poet; *Fructus dulcis*, sweet Fruit; *Dies Faustus*, a happy Day, &c. and if the Boy has as yet been taught Writing, let him write them either in the School, or at home, to be revised by the Master next Day.

OF IRREGULAR NOUNS.

THESE (for we cannot here make a full Enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following Scheme :

IRREGULAR NOUNS are,		
I. Defective.	I. Substantives.	<p>1. Number, { Sing. as <i>Liberi Mina, Arma.</i> Plur. as, <i>Aër, Humus, Ævum.</i></p> <p>2. Cases, { Nom. and Voc. } as { <i>Ditionis.</i> Gen. } Sing. { <i>Chaos.</i> Dat. } Plus. { <i>Ego.</i> Voc. } Ego.</p> <p>Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plur. as, <i>Mel.</i></p> <p>Three ; as, <i>Dica, dicam, dicas.</i></p> <p>Two ; as, <i>Suppetia, Suppetias.</i></p> <p>One ; as, <i>Dicis, Inficias, Noctu.</i></p> <p>Masc. as, <i>Catera, caterum.</i></p> <p>Fem. as, <i>Quisquis, quicquid.</i></p> <p>Neut. as, <i>Compos.</i></p> <p>Masc. and Fem. as, <i>Plus.</i></p> <p>Masc. and Neut. as, <i>Sicelis.</i></p> <p>Fem. and Neut. as, <i>Tros.</i></p> <p>Plur. as, <i>Unusquisque.</i></p> <p>Sing. as, <i>Centum.</i></p>
	2. Adjectives.	<p>1. Gender, { Masc. and Fem. as, <i>Plus.</i> Masc. and Neut. as, <i>Sicelis.</i> Fem. and Neut. as, <i>Tros.</i></p> <p>2. Number, { Plur. as, <i>Unusquisque.</i> Sing. as, <i>Centum.</i></p> <p>3. Case, { Voc. as, <i>Nullus.</i> Dat. and Abl. as, <i>Tantundem.</i></p>
	or having only	
	or having the - - Voc. only ; as, <i>Masse, Massi.</i>	
2. Variable.	1. Too much,	<p>Masc. Neut. as, <i>Manalus, Manala.</i></p> <p>Masc. & Neut. as, <i>Locus -ci, and -ca.</i></p> <p>Neut. as, <i>Carbasus, Carbasa.</i></p> <p>Masc. as, <i>Cælum, cæli.</i></p> <p>Fem. as, <i>Epulum, epula.</i></p> <p>Masc. & Neut. as, <i>Frenum, -ni & -na.</i></p> <p>2. and 1. as, <i>Delicium, delicia.</i></p> <p>2. and 4. as, <i>Laurus, -ri, and -rus.</i></p> <p>3. and 2. as, <i>Vas, -sis ; -sa, -forum.</i></p>
	2. Too little, as, Indclinables,	<p>altogether ; as, <i>Fas.</i></p> <p>in the Sing. as, <i>Cornu.</i></p>
	In Gender having Sing. and Plur.	
3. Redundant.	In Termination - - -	<p>only ; as, <i>Helena, Helene.</i></p> <p>and Gender ; as, <i>Tignus, tignum.</i></p> <p>and Decl. as, <i>Materia, materies.</i></p> <p>Gend. and Decl. as, <i>Æther, athra.</i></p>
	In Gender - - -	<p>only ; as, <i>hic & hoc Vulgus.</i></p>
	In Declension - - -	<p>only ; as, <i>Fames, famis</i>, of the 3d, Abl. <i>fame</i>, of the 5th, because the last Syllable is always long with the Poets.</p>

NOTE, 1. That the *Defective* Nouns are not so numerous as is commonly believed.

NOTE, 2. That these which *vary too little*, may be ranked under the *Defective*, and these which *vary too much*, under the *Redundant*, E. G. *Cæli*, *Cælorum*, comes not from *Cælum*, but from *Cælus*; and *Vasa*, *Vasorum*, not from *Vas*, *Vasis*, but from *Vasum*, *Vasi*: But Custom, which alone gives laws to all Languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the Plural; and so of others.

De Comparatione.

M. Q U O T sunt Gradus Comparationis?

D. Tres; *Positivus*, *Comparativus* & *Superlativus*.

M. Quotæ Declinationis sunt hi Gradus?

D. *Positivus* est Adjectivum *Primæ* & *Secundæ* Declinationis, vel *Tertiæ* tantum; *Comparativus* est semper *Tertiæ*; *Superlativus* semper *Primæ* & *Secundæ*.

M. Unde formatur *Comparativus* Gradus?

D. A proximo casu *Positivi* in *i*, addendo pro Masculino & Fœminino syllabam *or*, & *us* pro Neutro; ut,

Doctus, learned, Gen. *docti*, *doctior*, & *doctius*, more learned; *Mitis*, meek, Dat. *miti*, *mitior*, & *mitius*, more meek.

M. Unde formatur *Superlativus*?

D. 1. Si *Positivus* desinat in *er*, *Superlativus* formatur addendo *rimus*; ut,

Pulcher, fair, *pulcherrimus*, most fair; *Pauper*, poor, *pau-perrimus*, most poor.

2. Si *Positivus* non desinat in *er*, *Superlativus* formatur à proximo casu in *i*, addendo *ssimus*; ut,

Of Comparison.

M. H O W many Degrees of Comparison are there?

S. Three; the *Positive*, *Comparative* and *Superlative*.

M. Of what Declension are these Degrees?

S. The *Positive* is an Adjective of the *First* and *Second* Declension, or *Third* only; the *Comparative* is always of the *Third*; the *Superlative* always of the *First* and *Second*.

M. Whence is the *Comparative* Degree formed?

S. From the next Case of the *Positive* in *i*, by adding for the *Masculine* and *Feminine* the Syllable *or*, and *us* for the *Neuter*; as,

M. Whence is the *Superlative* formed?

S. 1. If the *Positive* ends in *er*, the *Superlative* is formed by adding *rimus*; as,

2. If the *Positive* ends not in *er*, the *Superlative* is formed from the next Case in *i*, by adding *ssimus*; as,

Gen. *Docti*, *Doctissimus*, most learned : Dat. *Miti*, *mitissimus*, most meek.

By Grammatical COMPARISON we understand three Adjective Nouns; of which the two last are formed from the first, and import Comparison with it, that is, Heightening or Lessening of its Signification.

Consequently these Adjectives only which are capable of having their Signification increased or diminished, can be compared.

The POSITIVE signifies the Quality of a Thing simply and absolutely, as, *Durus*, hard ; *Parvus*, little.

The COMPARATIVE heightens or lessens that Quality ; as, *Durior*, harder ; *Minor*, less.

The SUPERLATIVE heightens or lessens it to a very high or very low Degree ; as, *Durissimus*, hardest, or most hard ; *Minimus*, very little, or least.

The Positive hath various Terminations ; the Comparative ends always in *or* and *us* ; the Superlative always in *mus*, *ma*, *mun*.

[† The Positive, properly speaking, is no Degree of Comparison, for it does not compare Things together : However, it is accounted one, because the other two are founded upon and formed from it.]

The SIGN of the Comparative in our Language is the Syllable *or*, added to an Adjective, or the Word *more* put before it.

The SIGN of the Superlative is the Syllable *est* added to an Adjective, or the Words *very* or *most* put before it.

NOTE, That when the Positive is a long Word, or would otherwise sound harsh by having *er* or *est* added to it, we commonly make the Comparative by the Word *more*, and the Superlative by *most* or *very* put before it.

And, for the like Reason, the Latin Comparative is sometimes made by *Magis*, and the Superlative by *Valde* or *Maxime*, put before the Positive. And these are particularly used, when the Positive ends in *us* with a Vowel before it ; as, *Pius*, godly ; *Arduus*, high ; *Idoneus*, fit ; tho' not always.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. *Bonus*, *melior*, *optimus* : *Good*, *better*, *best*.
Malus, *pejor*, *peffimus* : *Evil*, *worse*, *worst*.
Magnus, *major*, *maximus* : *Great*, *greater*, *greatest*.
Parvus, *minor*, *minimus* : *Little*, *less*, *least*.

Multus, *plurimus* ; *multa*, *plurima* ; *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum* : *much*, *more*, *most*.

2. *Facilis*, *easy* ; *Humilis*, *low* ; *Similis*, *like* ; make their Superlative by changing *i* into *limus* ; thus, *facillimus*, *humillimus*, *simillimus*.

3. *Exter*, outward ; *Citer*, hither ; *Superus*, above ; *Inferus*, below ; *Posterus*, behind ; have regular Comparatives ; but their Superlatives are, *extremus* (or *extimus*), uttermost ; *citimus*, hithermost ; *supremus* or *summus*, uppermost, highest, last ; *infimus* or *imus*, lowest ; *postremus* (or *postimus*, latest or last).

4. Compounds in *Dicus*, *Loquus*, *Ficus*, and *Volus*, have *entior* and *entissimus* ; as, *Maledicus*, one that raileth ; *Magniloquus*, one that boasteth ; *Beneficus*, beneficent ; *Malevolus*, malevolent. But these seem rather to come from Participles or Nouns in *ens*. Besides the Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives derived from *Loquor* and *Facio* are very rare, and Terence has *Mirificissimus*, and Plautus has *Mendaciloquius*.

5. *Prior*, former, has *Primus*, first ; *Uterior*, farther ; *Ultimus*, farthest, or last ; *Propior*, nearer, *Proximus*, nearest, or next ; *Orior*, swifter, *Ocissi-*

22 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

mus, swiftest; their Positives being out of Use, or quite wanting. *Proximus* has also another Comparative formed from it, viz. *Proximior*.

6. There are also a great many other Adjectives capable of having their Signification increased, which yet want one, or more of these Degrees of Comparison; as, *Almus*, gracious, without Compar. and Superl. *Ingens*, great, *Ingentior*, greater, without the Superl. *Sacer*, holy, *Sacerrimus*, most holy, without the Compar. *Anterior*, former, without Posit. and Superl.

¶ These three Degrees of Comparison, being nothing else but three distinct Adjectives, may be declined either severally each by itself, or jointly together; Respect still being had to their Declensions. But the first way is much easier, and will answer all the Purposes of Comparison as well as the other.

C A P. II. De Pronomine.

M. QUOT sunt Pronomina + simplicia?

D. Octodecim; Ego, Tu, Sui; Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester; Nostras, Vestras & Cujas.

¶ Ex his tria sunt Substantiva, Ego, Tu, Sui; reliqua quindecim sunt Adjectiva.

Sing. {
Nom. ego, I,
Gen. mei, of me,
Dat. mihi, to me
Acc. me, me,
Voc. —
Abl. me, with me:

Ego, I.

Plur. {
Nom. nos, we,
Gen. nostrum vel nostri, of us,
Dat. nobis, to us,
Acc. nos, us,
Voc. —
Abl. nobis, with us.

Tu, Thou.

Sing. {
N. tu, thou,
G. tui, of thee,
D. tibi, to thee.
A. te, thee,
V. tu, O thou,
A. te, with thee:

or you,

Plur. {
N. vos, ye, [you,]
G. vestrum vel vestri, of you,
D. vobis, to you,
A. vos, you,
V. vos, O ye, [you,]
A. vobis, with you.

† See Chap. IX.

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Sing.	N.			N.		
	G.	sui, of himself, &c.	Plur.	G.	sui of themselves,	
	D.	sibi, to himself,		D.	sibi, to themselves,	
	A.	se, himself,		A.	se, themselves,	
	V.			V.		
	A.	se, with himself :		A.	se, with themselves.	

A PRONOUN is an irregular Kind of Noun: Or, it is a Part of Speech which has respect to, and supplies the Place of a Noun; as, instead of your Name, I say, Tu, Thou or You; Instead of *Jacobus fecit*, James did it, I say, *Ille fecit*, He did it, viz. James.

NOTE, 1. That the Dat. *Mibi* is sometimes by the Poets contracted into *Mi*.

NOTE, 2. That of old, the Gen. Plur. of *Ego* was *Nostrorum* and *Nostrarum*; of *Tu*, *Vestrorum* and *Vestrarum* (of which there are several Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*) which were afterwards contracted into *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*.

NOTE, 3. That we use *Nostrum* and *Vestrum* after Numerals, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives, and *Nostri* and *Vestri* after other Nouns, and Verbs; though there want not some Examples of these last with *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*, even in *Cicero* himself, as *Vossius* shews.

Ille, illa, illud; He, she, that or it.

Sing.	N.	ille, illa, illud,	Plur.	N.	illi, illæ, illa,	
	G.	illius, illius, illius,		G.	illorum, illarum, illorum,	
	D.	illi, illi, illi,		D.	illis, illis, illis,	
	A.	illum, illam, illud,		A.	illos, illas, illa,	
	V.	ille, illa, illud,		V.	illi, illæ, illa,	
	A.	illo, illa, illo :		A.	illis, illis, illis.	

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, he himself, she herself, itself; and iste, ista, istud, he, she, that, are declined as ille, save only that ipse hath ipsum in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. sing. Neuter.

Hic, hæc, hoc, This.

Sing.	N.	hic, hæc, hoc,	Plur.	N.	hi, hæ, hæc,	
	G.	hujus, hujus, hujus,		G.	horum, harum, horum,	
	D.	huic, huic, huic,		D.	his, his, his,	
	A.	hunc, hanc, hoc,		A.	hos, has, hæc,	
	V.	hic, hæc, hoc,		V.	hi, hæ, hæc,	
	A.	hoc, hac, hoc :		A.	his, his, his.	

Is, ea, id; He, she, it, or that.

Sing.	N.	is, ea, id,	Plur.	N.	ii, eæ, ea,	
	G.	ejus, ejus, ejus,		G.	eorum, earum, eorum,	
	D.	ei, ei, ei,		D.	iis, vel eis,	
	A.	eum, eam, id,		A.	eos, eas, eæ,	
	V.			V.		
	A.	eo, ea, eo :		A.	iis, vel eis.	

Quis, quæ, quod *vel* quid? *Who, which, what?*

Sing.

Plur.

N. quis,	quæ,	quod, <i>vel</i> quid,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis, <i>vel</i> quibus,		
A. quem,	quam,	quod, <i>vel</i> quid,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. ———	———		V. ———	———	
A. quo,	qua,	quo :	A. queis, <i>vel</i> quibus.		

Qui, quæ, quod ; *Who, which, that.*

Sing.

Plur.

N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis, <i>vel</i> quibus,		
A. quem,	quam,	quod,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. ———	———		V. ———	———	
A. quo,	qua,	quo :	A. queis, <i>vel</i> quibus.		

Meus, my, or mine ; *Tuus*, thy, or thine ; *Suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *Bonus*, -a, -um ; And *Noster*, our, or ours ; *Vester*, your, or yours, like *Pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the First and Second Declension. But *Tuus*, *Suus* and *Vester*, want the Vocative ; *Noster* and *Meus* have it, in which this last hath *mi*, (and sometimes *meus*) in the Masc. Singular.

Nostras, of our country ; *Vestras*, of your country ; *Cujas*, of what or which Country ? are declined like *Felix*, of the Third Declension, Gen. *Nostratis*, Dat. *Nostrati*, &c.

NOTE, 1. That all Nouns and Pronouns which one cannot call upon, or address himself unto, want the Vocative. In consequence of which Rule many Nouns, as, *Nullus*, *Nemo* ; *Qualis*, *Quantus*, *Quot*, &c. and several Pronouns, as, *Ego*, *Sui*, *Quis*, &c. want the Vocative ; but not so many, either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which Reason we have given Vocatives to *Ille*, *Ipse*, *Hic* and *Idem*, therein following the Judgment of the great *Vossius*, *Messieurs de Port Royal*, and *Johnson*, which they support by the following Authorities :

Esto nunc, Sol, testis, & hac mihi terra precati. Virg. *Æn.* 12.

Tu mihi libertas illa paterna vale. Tibul. lib. 1. El. 4.

O nox illa, quæ pene æternas huic urbi tenebras attulisti. Cic. pro Flacc.

And the Vocative of *Idem* seems to be confirmed by that of Ovid, Met. 15.

——— *quique fuisti*

Hippolytus, dixit, nunc idem Virbius esto.

Though all Authors before them will only allow four Pronouns, viz. *Tu*, *Meus*, *Noster* and *Nostras*, to have the Vocative.

NOTE, 2. That *Qui* is sometimes used for *Quis*, as, Cic. *Qui tantus fuit labor?* Ter. *Qui erit rumor populi, si id feceris?*

NOTE, 3. That *Quod* with its Compounds, *Aliquod*, *Quodvis*, *Quoddam*, &c. are used when they agree with a Substantive in the same Case; *Quid* with its Compounds *Aliquid*, *Quidvis*, *Quiddam*, &c. either have no Substantive exprest, or govern one in the Genitive: Whence it is that these last are commonly reckoned Substantives. But that *quid* as well as *quod* is originally an Adjective, its Signification plainly shews; otherwise we shall make *Multum*, *Plus*, *Tantum*, *Quantum*, &c. also Substantives, when they govern the Genitive; which yet most Grammarians agree to be Adjectives, having the common Word *Negotium* understood.

NOTE, 4. That *Qui* the Relative hath oftentimes *qui* in the Ablative, and that (which is remarkable) in all Genders and Numbers, as Mr. Johnson evinces by a great many Examples out of *Plautus* and *Terence*; to which he might have added one out of *C. Nepos*, III. 3.

NOTE, 5. That *Nostras*, *Vestras*, and *Cujas*, are declined like *Gentile* or *National* Nouns in as of the Third Decl. in Imitation of which they are formed; as, *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, *Privernas*, a Man, Woman, or Thing, of or belonging to the Towns of *Arpinum*, *Fidena*, or *Privernum*, and may have the Neut. as well as these: (For as *Cic.* has *Iter Arpinas*, and *Liv. Bellum Privernas*; so *Colum.* has *Arbustum nostras*, and *Cic. Nostratia verba*) contrary to what *Linacæ* teaches.

[I pass over taking notice, that in old authors, especially *Plautus*, we find *quis* and *quisquis* sometimes of the Fem. Gender; *mis* and *tis* for *mei* and *tui*; *hiscæ* for *hi*; *hibus*, *ibus*, for *his*, *iis*; *illæ*, *ipsæ*, *istæ*, *quæ*, in the Gen. or Dat. Sing. Fem. *eum* for *eum*; *istes* for *istos*; *quouis*, *quoi*, for *cujus*, *cui*, because they are extraordinary.]

Of COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

I. Some are compounded of *Quis* and *Qui*, with some other Word or Syllable. In these *Quis* is sometimes the first and sometimes the last Part of the Word compounded: But *Qui* is always the first.

1. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put first, are, *Quisnam*, who? *Quispiam*, *Quisquam*, any one; *Quisque*, every one; *Quisquis*, whosoever: Which are thus declined;

Quisnam,	quænam,	quodnam,	vel quidnam;	cujusnam,	cuinam.
Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam,	vel quidpiam;	cujuspiam,	cuipiam.
Quisquam,	quæquam,	quodquam,	vel quidquam;	cujusquam,	cuiquam.
Quisque,	quæque,	quodque,	vel quidque;	cujusque,	cuique.
Quisquis,	_____	quidquid,	vel quicquid;	cujuscujus,	cuicui.

And so forth in their other Cases, according to the simple *Quis*. But *Quisquis* has no Feminine at all, and the Neuter only in the Nom. and Acc. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Acc. *quenquam*, without the Fem. the Plural is scarcely used.

2. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put last, are, *Aliquis*, some; *Ecquis*, who? To which some add, *Nequis*, *Siquis* and *Numquis*; but these are more frequently read separately, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined,

are thus declined,		Nom.		Gen.	Dat.
Aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquod,	vel aliquid,	alicujus,	alicui.
Ecquis,	ecqua, <i>velecquæ</i> ,	ecquod,	vel ecquid,	eccujus,	eccui.
Si quis,	si qua,	si quod,	vel si quid,	si cujus,	si cui.
Ne quis,	ne qua,	ne quod,	vel ne quid,	ne cujus,	ne cui.
Num quis,	num qua,	num quod,	vel num quid,	num cujus,	num cui.

NOTE, That these, and only these, have *qua* in the Nom. Sing. Fem. and Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut.

26 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

3. The Compounds of *Qui* are *Quicunque*, whosoever; *Quidam*, some; *Quilibet*, *Quivis*, any one, whom you please; and are thus declined,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
<i>Quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque,</i>	<i>cujuscunque, cuicunque.</i>	
<i>Quidam, quædam, quoddam, vel quiddam,</i>	<i>cujusdam, cuidam.</i>	
<i>Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, vel quidlibet,</i>	<i>cujuslibet, cuilibet.</i>	
<i>Quivis, quævis, quodvis, vel quidvis,</i>	<i>cujusvis, cuivis.</i>	

Some of these are twice compounded; as, *Ecquisnam*, Who? *Unusquisque*, Every one. The first is scarce declined beyond its Nom. and the second wants the Plur.

NOTE, 1. That all these Compounds want the Vocative, except, *Quisque*, *Aliquis*, *Quilibet*, *Unusquisque*, and perhaps some others. *Vid. Voss. p. 335.*

NOTE, 2. That all these Compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their Dat. and Abl. Plur.

NOTE, 3. That *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam*, *vel quiddam*, in the Acc. Sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the Gen. Plur. *n* being put instead of *m* for the better Sound, as it is for the same Reason in these Cases of *Idem*.

II. Some reckon among Compound Pronouns, *Ego*, *Tu*, and *Sui*, with *Ipse*; but in the best Books they are generally read separately; which seems necessary, because of *te ipse* and *se ipse*, where the two Words are of different Cases.

III. *Is* is compounded with the Syllable *dem*, and contracted into *Idem*, the same; which is thus declined:

Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	<i>Idem, eadem, idem,</i>	Nom.	<i>iidem, eædem, eadem,</i>		
Gen.	<i>ejusdem, ejusdem, ejusdem,</i>	Gen.	<i>eorundem, earundem, eorundem,</i>		
Dat.	<i>eidem, eidem, eidem,</i>	Dat.	<i>eisdem, vel iisdem,</i>		
Acc.	<i>eundem, eandem, idem,</i>	Acc.	<i>eisdem, eadem, eadem,</i>		
Voc.	<i>idem, eadem, idem,</i>	Voc.	<i>iidem, eædem, eadem,</i>		
Abl.	<i>eodem, eadem, eodem:</i>	Abl.	<i>eisdem, vel iisdem.</i>		

IV. Most of the other Compound Pronouns are only to be found in certain Cases and Genders; as,

1. Of *Iste* and *hic* is compounded, Nom. *Isthic, isthæc, isthoc, vel isthuc,* Acc. *Isthunc, isthanc, isthoc, vel isthuc.* Abl. *Isthoc, isthac, isthoc.* Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut. *Isthæc.*

2. Of *Ecce* and *Is* is compounded *Eccum, Eccam*; Plur. *eccos, eccas*: And from *Ecce* and *Ille*, *Ellum, ellam*; *ellos, ellas*, in the Accusatives.

3. Of *Modus* and *is*, *hic, iste, and quis*, are compounded these Genitives, *Ejusmodi, hujusmodi, istiusmodi, cujusmodi*; and sometimes with the Syllable *ce* put in the Middle, *ejuscemodi, hujuscemodi, &c.*

4. Of *cum* and these Ablatives, *me, te, se, nobis, vobis, quæ, or quo*, and *quibus*, are compounded *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum, or quocum, and quibuscum.*

5. To these add some Pronouns compounded with these syllabical Adjections, *met, te, ce, pte, cine*, to make their Signification more pointed and emphatical, as, *Egomēt, tute, hujusce, meapte, hiccine.*

REMARKS on ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

1. In the Nominative, or Foregoing State (as the English Grammarians call it) we use, *I, Thou, He, She, We, Ye, They*, and *Who*: But in the other Cases (which they name the Following State) we use, *Me, Thee, Him, Her, Us, You, Them*, and *Whom*.

2. When we speak of a Person, we use *Who* and *Whom*, whether we ask a Question or not; as, *Who did it?* *The Man who did it.* But if we speak of a Thing, with a Question, we use *What?* as, *What Book is that?* Without a Question? we use *Which?* as, *The Book which you gave me.* And then it is frequently understood; as, *The Book you gave me.*

NOTE, That *What* is often used, even without a Question, instead of *The Thing which*, or *That which*; as, *I know what you design.* i. e. *The Thing which*, or *That which* you design. As, on the contrary, when it refers to some particular Thing mentioned before, we make use of *Which*, even with a Question; as, *Give me the Book, Which Book? Which of the Books?*

3. *This* makes in the Plural *These*, and *That* makes *Those*.

NOTE, That *That* is frequently used instead of *Who*, *Whom*, or *Which*; as, *The Man that told you, the Man that we saw, the Book that I lent you.*

4. We use *My*, *Thy*, *Her*, *Our*, *Your*, *Their*, when they are joined with Substantives, or the Word *Own*; and *Mine*, *Thine*, *Hers*, *Ours*, *Yours*, *Theirs*, when the Substantive is left out or understood; as, *My Book, This Book is mine, &c.*

NOTE, That with *own*, or a Substantive beginning with a Vowel, we sometimes use *Mine* and *Thine*; as, *My Eye, or Mine Eye; Thy own, or Thine own.*

5. We often use *Here*, *There*, *Where*, compounded with these Particles, *Of*, *By*, *Upon*, *About*, *In*, *With*, instead of *This*, *That*, *Which*, and *What*, with these same Particles; as, *Hereof*, *Hereby*, *Hereupon*, *Hereabouts*, *Herein*, *Herewith*; for *Of this*, *By this*, *Upon this*, *About this Place*, *In this*, *With this*, &c.

6. *Whose* and *Its* are Genitives, instead of, *Of whom*, *Of it*; and it is a Fault to use *Its* for 'Tis, or it is, as some do.

C A P. III.

De Verbo.

M. **Q**uomodo declinatur Verbum?

D. Per Voces, Modos, Tempora, Numeros, & Personas.

M. Quot sunt Voces?

D. Duæ; Activa & Passiva.

M. Quot sunt Modi?

D. Quatuor; Indicativus, Subjunctivus, Imperativus, & Infinitivus.

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

C H A P. III.

Of Verb.

M **H**OW is a Verb declined?

S. By Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.

M. How many Voices are there?

S. Two; the Active and Passive.

M. How many Moods are there?

S. Four; Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.

M. How many Numbers are there?

28 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

D. Duo ; Singularis & Pluralis.

M. Quot sunt Tempora ?

D. Quinque ; Præsens, Præteritum-imperfectum, Præteritum-perfectum, Præteritum-plusquamperfectum, & Futurum.

M. Quot sunt Personæ ?

D. Tres ; Prima, Secunda, Tertia.

S. Two ; Singular and Plural.

M. How many Tenses are there ?

S. Five ; the Present, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect, and the Future.

M. How many Persons are there ?

S. Three ; First, Second, Third.

A VERB is a Part of Speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer. Or, a Verb is that Part of Speech which expresses what is affirmed or said of Things.

A Verb may be distinguished from any other Part of Speech these two Ways. 1. A Verb being the most necessary and essential Part of a Sentence, without which it cannot subsist, whatever Word with a Substantive Noun makes full Sense, or a Sentence, is a Verb ; and that which does not make full Sense with it, is not a Verb. 2. Whatever Word with HE or IT SHALL before it makes Sense, is a Verb, otherwise not.

I. In most Verbs there are two Forms or VOICES, the ACTIVE ending in *o*, and the PASSIVE in *or*. The former expresses what is done by the Nominative or Person before it. The latter what is suffered by or done to the Nominative or Person before it ; *Amo*, I love ; *Amor*, I am loved.

II. The MOODS are divided into *Finite* and *Infinite*. The first three, viz. the *Indicative*, *Subjunctive* and *Imperative*, are called **FINITE**, because they have certain fixt Terminations answering to certain Persons both singular and plural. The last is called **INFINITIVE** or **INFINITE**, because it is not confined to one Number or Person more than another.

1. The **INDICATIVE** Mood affirms or denies positively ; as, *Amo*, I love ; *Non Amo*, I do not love : Or else asks a Question ; as *An amas ?* Dost thou love ? *Annon amas ?* dost thou not love ?

2. The **SUBJUNCTIVE** Mood generally depends upon another Verb in the same Sentence, either going before or coming after, as, *Si me ametis, præcepta mea servate*, If ye love me, keep my Commandments.

[This Mood is commonly branched out into three Moods, viz. the *Optative*, the *Subjunctive* more strictly taken, and the *Potential*, 1. It is called **OPTATIVE**, when a Word importing a Wish, as, *Utinam*, *Would to God*, *O si*, *O if*, goes before it. 2. It is named **SUBJUNCTIVE**, when it is subjoined to some other Conjunction or Adverb, or to Interrogatives becoming *Indefinites*. (See Chap. IX.) 3. It is called **POTENTIAL**, when with the simple affirmation of the Verb is also signified some Modification or Affection of it, such as a Power, Possibility, Liberty, Duty, Will, &c. The Signs whereof in our Language are, *May*, *Can*, *Might*, *Could*, *Would*, *Should*, and *Had*, (for *Would have* or *Should have* ; as, *They had repented*, for *would have*.) But because the Terminations of these Moods are the same, we have comprehended them all under one, viz. the *Subjunctive*, to which with small Difficulty

they may be reduced. Otherwise, if we will constitute as many Moods as there are various Modifications wherewith a Verb or Affirmation can be affected, we must multiply them to a far greater Number, and so we shall have a Promissive, Hortative, Precative, Concessive, Mandative, Interrogative Mood; nay, a Volitive and Debitive, which is commonly included in the Potential. As for the Optative, it is plain that the Wish is not in the Verb itself, (which signifies only the Matter of it, or what is wished) but in the Verb Opto, which is understood, with ut, uti, or utinam, which really signify no more but That, And it is very probable that in like Manner some Verb, or other Word, may also be understood to what is called the Potential Mood, such as Ita est, Res ita est, Fieri potest ut, &c. as Vossius, Sanctius, Perizonius, and others, do contend; tho' Mr. Johnson is of another Opinion.]

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood commands, exhorts or intreats, as, Ama, Love thou.

4. The INFINITIVE Mood expresses the Signification of the Verb in general, and is Englished by TO; as, Amare, To love.

III. The TENSES are either Simple or Compound. The SIMPLE Tenses, are the Present, the Preter-perfect, and Future.

1. The PRESENT

2. The PRETER-PERFECT

3. The FUTURE

} Tense speaks of Time now } Present.
Past.
To come

The COMPOUND Tenses are the Preter-imperfect and the Preter-pluperfect.

4. The PRETER-IMPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the Thing was present and unfinished then; as Amabam, I did love [viz. then.]

5. The PRETER-PLUPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the Thing was past at or before that Time; as Scripseram epistolam I had written a Letter [i. e. before that Time.]

There is also a Compound Future Tense called the FUTURE-PERFECT, or EXACT, which refers to some Time yet to come, and imports that a Thing as yet future shall be past and finished at or before that Time; as, cum cœnaverō tu leges, when I shall have supped [i. e. after Supper] you shall read This Future is only in the Subjunctive Mood, and the Sign of it is Shall have; as the other Future called the FUTURE-IMPERFECT, is only in the Indicative, which, when joined with another Future, imports that two things yet future shall be contemporary, or exist at one Time; as Cum cœnabo tu leges, When I shall sup, [i. e. in Time of Supper] you shall read.

[And not only the Tenses, but even the MOODS themselves may be divided into SIMPLE and COMPOUND. I call the Indicative a Simple Mood, because it simply affirms something of its Person or Nominative. But the other three Moods I call Compound, because they have some other Ideas or Modifications of our Thoughts superadded to the simple Signification of the Verb; such as, a Command, a Desire, Prohibition, Possibility, Liberty, Will, Duty, Wish, Concession, Supposition, Condition, Purpose, &c. These Modifications are either really included in the Verb; as, a Command, &c. in the Imperative, and, according to Johnson, Power, Will, Duty, &c. in the Mood called Potential; or closely interwoven with it by the Help of a Conjunction, Adverb, or other Verb express or understood: And because these also generally connote Time,

they very frequently make all the Tenses of these Moods to become Compound Tenses. For, with respect to their Execution, they are generally future ; but with respect to their Modal Signification, they may fall under any of the other Distinctions of Time as well as the Future. Thus, for instance, *Lege, Read thou*, with respect to its Execution, is future, but with respect to the Command it is present. Again, in *Legam, I may or can read*, the Action (if done at all) must be future, but the Liberty or Possibility are present ; and so of others. Now, as it seems evident, that, from these Modifications of the Verb, more than from the bare Execution of it, the Tenses of these Moods have at first been distinguished ; so I am of Opinion, that had Grammarians taken their Measures accordingly, they had not rendered this Matter so intricate as they have done. For some of them, as *Sanctius, &c.* determining the Times of these Moods by the Execution only, have made the whole Imperative and Subjunctive of the Future Time, and the Infinitive and Participles of all Times, or rather of no Time : Others, viz *Vossius, Linacer, Alvarus, Verepæus, &c.* tho' they will not go so far as *Sanctius*, yet upon the same Grounds make *utinam legam* the Future of the Optative ; *Utinam legerem* the Present of it. By the same Rule they make a future of the Potential in *RIM* ; as, *Citius crediderim, I should, or shall sooner believe* ; and another of the Subjunctive in *ISSEM* ; as *Juravit se illum statim interfectorum, nisi jusjurandum sibi dedisset* ; He swore he would presently kill him, if he should not swear to him, *Cic.* But, with all imaginable Deference to these great Men, I humbly think that these Tenses may be more easily accounted for, if we consider them as Compound, i. e. respecting one Time as to their Execution, and another as to the various Modifications superadded to, or involved in their Signification. To instance in the two last Examples, (because they seem to have the greatest Difficulty) *citius crediderim* seems to import these two things, 1st, That I have and continue to have a Reason why I should not believe it ; which Reason is of the Imperfect or past Time. And, 2^{dly}, That I shall sooner have believed it than another Thing, with respect to which it shall be past. For there are a great many Examples where the Preterite in *RIM* hath the same Signification with the Future Perfect in *RO*, as, *Si te inde eximerim, Terent. for eximero.* See *Voss. lib. v. cap. 15.* and *Aul. Gell. lib. xviii. cap. 2.* As to the other Example, the Composition of two Time. is yet more evident ; for tho' *jusjurandum dedisset* be posterior, and consequently future with respect to *juravit*, yet it is prior, not only to the Time of the Relation, but to *interfecturum* ; to prevent which it behoved necessarily to be past ; and so of others. The same Rule in my Opinion will likewise hold in the Infinitive and Participles, which of themselves have always one fixed Time ; and when they seem to be of another Time, that is not in them, but in the Verb that goes before them, or comes after them. Thus, for Instance, *Scribere* is always present, or co-existent with the Verb before it ; and *Scripisse* is always prior to the same Verb in all its Tenses : as *Dicit, dixit, or dicet ; juvat, juvit, or juvabit Me scribere and Me scripisse.* So also the Participles have a fixed Time, present, past, or future ; and when any Part of the Verb Sum is joined with them, they retain their own Time, and have these of that Verb superadded to them. But because there are innumerable Occasions of Speaking, wherein the nice Distinctions of Times are not necessary, therefore it frequently happens that they are promiscuously used ; as I could evince by a great many Examples, not only in the Passive, but Active Voice, both in the Latin and other Languages, if there were Place for it. Which yet, in my Judgment, does not hinder, but that every Part of a Verb hath formally, and of its own Nature, a certain Time simple or compound, to which it is fixed and determined.]

IV. There are two NUMBERS, the SINGULAR and the PLURAL, answering to the same Numbers of a Noun or Pronoun.

V. There are three PERSONS in each Number; the FIRST speaks of itself, the SECOND is spoken to, and the THIRD is spoken of. The First hath only EGO and NOS, the Second only TU and VOS, and the Third any Substantive Noun singular and plural, put before the respective Terminations of the Verb, answering to them through all Voices, Moods and Tenses.

[A Verb hath the same Respect to its Nominative that an Adjective hath to its Substantive; and therefore, as an adjective hath not properly either Genders or Numbers, but certain Terminations fitted for those of its Substantive, so a Verb hath properly neither Persons nor Numbers, but certain Terminations answering to the Persons and Numbers of its Nominative.]

NOTE, 1. That Ego and Tu are seldom exprest, because the Terminations of the Verb immediately discover them, without any Hazard of a Mistake.

NOTE, 2. That if a Substantive Noun be joined with Ego or Tu, the Verb is of the Person of these Pronouns, not of the Noun.

NOTE, 3. That in the Continuation of a Discourse, the third Person is also frequently understood, because easily known by what went before; and these Pronouns, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, idem, quis, and qui, do often supply the Place of it.

The ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are,

Present	{	Act. the Theme of the Verb, and est, et, or s; or for the greater Emphasis, do, dost, doth, or does, before it.
		Pass. am, art, is, are, be, beest, with a Word in ed, en, t, &c.
Imperf.	{	Act. ed, edst, &c. or for the greater Emphasis, did, didst, before it.
		Pass. was, wast, were, wert, with a Word in ed, en, &c.
Perfect	{	Act. have, hast, hath or has, with a Word in ed, en, &c. or as the Imp.
		Pass. have been, hast been, hath or has been, with a Word in ed, en, &c.
Pluper.	{	Act. had, hadst, with a Word in ed, en, &c.
		Pass. had been, hadst been, with a Word in ed, en, &c.
Future	{	Act. shall, will, shalt, wilt, with the Verb.
		Pass. shall be, will be, shalt be, wilt be, with a Word in ed, en, &c.

The Subjunctive Mood Active has frequently these Signs:

Present.	may or can.
Imperf.	might, could, would, should.
Perfect.	may have or might have, could have, would have, should have.
Pluperf.	might have, could have, would have, should have, or had.
Future.	shall have.

The Passive has frequently the same Signs with be or been.

De Conjugationibus.

M. Q U O T sunt Conjugationes?

D. Quatuor; Prima, Secunda, Tertia & Quarta.

M. Quæ sunt Notæ harum Conjugationum?

Of Conjugations.

M. H O W many Conjugations are there?

S. Four; First, Second, Third and Fourth.

M. What are the Marks of these Conjugations?

D.				S.			
Prima	habet	A longum	ante re Infinitivi.	First	habet	A long	before re of the Infinitive.
Secunda		E longum		Second		E long	
Tertia		E breve		Third		E short	
Quarta		I longum		Fourth		I long	

The Common Characteristick or MARK by which these Conjugations are distinguished from one another, is one of these three Vowels, A, E, I, before the RE of the Infinitive Active, tho' they also may be known by the same Vowels in several other Parts of them; for A long is most frequent in the First, E long in the Second, E or I short in the Third, and I long in the Fourth: Only E before *bam*, *bas*, *bat*, &c. and before *mus* and *tis*; and *mur* and *mini*, is always long in whatever Conjugation it is found.

But it is to be observed that the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and all the Parts formed from them. (because of the great Irregularity of their middle Syllables, and constant Agreement in their last Vowel, and in the Terminations arising from it in all Conjugations) cannot properly be said to be of any one Conjugation more than another; for there is nothing, for Example, in *Fricui*, *Docui*, *Elicui*, *Amicui*, or in *Fricum*, *Docum*, *Elicum*, *Amicum*, or in the Parts that come from them, whereby to distinguish their Conjugations.

Prima Conjugatio.

A M O.

Vox Activa.

Præcipuæ Partes.

Præs. Indic. Perfect.

Am-o, am-avi,

INDICATIVUS Modus.

Præsens.

Sing. { 1 A M-o,
2 A Am-as,
3 Am-at :

Plur. { 1 Am-amus,
2 Am-atis,
3 Am-ant.

Imperfectum.

Sing. { 1 Am-abam,
2 Am-abas,
3 Am-abat :

Plur. { 1 Am-abamus,
2 Am-abatis,
3 Am-abant.

The first Conjugation.

To Love.

The Active Voice.

The principal Parts.

Sup.

Præs. Infin.

am-atum,

am-are.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

The Present.

1 I Love, or do love,
2 Thou lovest, or dost love.
3 He loveth, or doth love :
1 We love, or do love,
2 Ye (or you) love, or do love,
3 They love, or do love.

The Imperfect

1 I loved, or did love,
2 Thou lovedst, or didst love,
3 He loved, or did love :
1 We loved, or did love,
2 Ye loved, or did love,
3 They loved, or did love.

Perfectum.

The Perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-avi,	1	I have loved *
	2	Am-avisti,	2	Thou hast loved,
	3	Am-avit :	3	He hath loved :
Plur.	1	Am-avimus,	1	We have loved,
	2	Am-avistis,	2	Ye have loved,
	3	Am-averunt vel -avere.	3	They have loved.

Plusquamperfectum.

The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-averam,	1	I had loved,
	2	Am-averas,	2	Thou hadst loved,
	3	Am-averat :	3	He had loved :
Plur.	1	Am-averamus,	1	We had loved,
	2	Am-averatis,	2	Ye had loved,
	3	Am-averant.	3	They had loved.

Futurum.

The Future.

Sing.	1	Am-abo,	1	I shall or will love,
	2	Am-abis,	2	Thou shalt or wilt love,
	3	Am-abit :	3	He shall or will love :
Plur.	1	Am-abimus,	1	We shall or will love,
	2	Am-abitis,	2	Ye shall or will love,
	3	Am-abunt.	3	They shall or will love.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Præsens.

The Present.

Sing.	1	Am-em,	1	I may or can love,
	2	Am-es,	2	Thou mayst or canst love,
	3	Am-et :	3	He may or can love :
Plur.	1	Am-emus,	1	We may or can love,
	2	Am-etis,	2	Ye may or can love,
	3	Am-ent.	3	They may or can love.

Imperfectum.

The Imperfect.

Sing.	1	Am-arem,	1	I might, could, would, or should
	2	Am-ares,	2	Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, &c.
	3	Am-aret :	3	He might, could, would, or should
Plur.	1	Am-aremus,	1	We might, could, would, or should
	2	Am-aretis,	2	Ye might, could, would, or should
	3	Am-arent.	3	They might, could, would, or should

E

Or, * I loved, or did love, Thou lovedst or didst love, &c. as in the Imperfect.

34 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Perfectum.

The Perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-averim,	1	I may have loved,
	2	Am-averis,	2	Thou mayst have loved,
	3	Am-averit :	3	He may have loved :
Plur.	1	Am-averimus,	1	We may have loved,
	2	Am-averitis,	2	Ye may have loved,
	3	Am-averint.	3	They may have loved.

Plusquamperfectum.

The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-avissem,	1	I might, could, would, &c. have or	} had loved.
	2	Am-avisses,	2	Thou mightst, couldst, &c. have or	
	3	Am-avisset :	3	He might, could, &c. have or	
Plur.	1	Am-avissemus,	1	We might, could, &c. have or	
	2	Am-avissetis,	2	Ye might, could, &c. have or	
	3	Am-avissent.	3	They might, could, &c. have or	

Futurum.

The Future.

Sing.	1	Am-avero,	1	I shall have loved,
	2	Am-averis,	2	Thou shalt have loved,
	3	Am-averit :	3	He shall have loved :
Plur.	1	Am-averimus,	1	We shall have loved,
	2	Am-averitis,	2	Ye shall have loved,
	3	Am-averint.	3	They shall have loved.

IMPERATIVUS Modus. The IMPERATIVE Mood.

Præsens.

The Present.

Sing.	2	Am-a vel am-ato,	2	Love thou, or do thou love,
	3	Am-ato :	3	Let him love :
Plur.	2	Am-ate vel am-atote,	2	Love ye, or do ye love,
	3	Am-anto.	3	Let them love.

INFINITIVUS Modus. The INFINITIVE Mood.

Præf. Am-are.

Præf. To love.

Perf. Am-avisse.

Perf. To have or had loved.

Fut. Am-aturum esse vel fuisse. Fut. To be about to love.

PARTICIPIA.

The PARTICIPLES.

Præf. Am-ans.

Of the Present, Loving.

Fut. Am-aturus, -a, -um. Of the Future, About to love.

GERUNDIA.

The GERUNDS.

Nom. Am-andum,

Nom. Loving,

Gen. Am-andi,

Gen. Of Loving,

Dat. Am-ando,
Acc. Am-andum,
Abl. Am-ando.

Dat. To loving,
Acc. Loving,
Abl. From, in, or by loving.

SUPINA.

Prius, Am-atum.
Posterius, Amatu.

The SUPINES.

First, To love.
Last, To love, or to be loved.

VOX PASSIVA.

The Passive Voice.

Amor, amatus, amari.

INDICATIVUS Modus, The INDICATIVE Mood.

Præsens.

The Present.

Sing. { 1 Am-or,
2 Am-aris vel -are,
3 Am-atur :
Plur. { 1 Am-amur,
2 Am-amini,
3 Am-antur.

1 I am loved,
2 Thou art loved,
3 He is loved ;
1 We are loved,
2 Ye are loved,
3 They are loved.

Imperfectum.

The Imperfect.

Sing. { 1 Am-abar,
2 Am-abaris vel -abare,
3 Am-abatur :
Plur. { 1 Am-abamur,
2 Am-abamini,
3 Am-abantur.

1 I was
2 Thou wast [wert]
3 He was
1 We were
2 Ye were
3 They were

Perfectum.

The Perfect.

Sing. { Am-atus { 1 sum vel fui,
2 es vel fuisti,
3 est vel fuit :
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 sumus vel fuimus,
2 estis vel fuistis,
3 sunt fuerunt v. fuerunt.

1 I have been
2 Thou hast been
3 He hath been
1 We have been
2 Ye have been
3 They have been

Plusquamperfectum.

The Plu-perfect.

Sing. { Am-atus { 1 eram vel fueram,
2 eras vel fueras,
3 erat vel fuerat :
Plur. { Am-ati { 1 eramus v. fueramus,
2 eratis vel fueratis,
3 erant vel fuerant.

1 I had been
2 Thou hadst been
3 He had been
1 We had been
2 Ye had been
3 They had been

Futurum.

The Future.

Sing. { 1 Am-abor,
2 Am-aberis vel -abere,
3 Am-abitur :

1 I shall or will be
2 Thou shalt or wilt be
3 He shall or will be

36 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Plur.	{	1 Am-abimur,	1 We shall or will be	} loved.
		2 Am-abimini,	2 Ye shall or will be	
		3 Am-abuntur.	3 They shall or will be	

SUBJUNCTIVUS Modus. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Præfens.			The Present.		
Sing.	{	1 Am-er,	1 I may or can be	} loved.	
		2 Am-etis vel -ere,	2 Thou mayst or canst be		
		3 Am-etur :	3 He may or can be		
Plur.	{	1 Am-emur,	1 We may or can be	} loved.	
		2 Am-emin,	2 Ye may or can be		
		3 Am-entur.	3 They may or can be		

Imperfectum.			The Imperfect.		
Sing.	{	1 Am-arer,	1 I might, could, would, &c.	} be loved.	
		2 Am-areris vel -arere,	2 Thou mightst, couldst, &c.		
		3 Am-aretur :	3 He might, could, &c.		
Plur.	{	1 Am-aremur,	1 We might, could, &c.	} be loved.	
		2 Am-aremini,	2 Ye might, could, &c.		
		3 Am-arentur.	3 They might, could, &c.		

Perfectum.			The Perfect.		
Sing.	{	1 Am-atus { 1 sim vel fuerim,	1 I may have been	} loved.	
		2 sis vel fueris,	2 Thou mayst have been		
		3 sit vel fuerit :	3 He may have been		
Plur.	{	1 Am-ati { 1 simus vel fuerimus,	1 We may have been	} loved.	
		2 sitis vel fueritis,	2 Ye may have been		
		3 sint vel fuerint.	3 They may have been		

Plusquamperfectum.			The Plu-perfect.		
Sing.	{	1 Am-atus { 1 essem vel fuisset,	1 I might, could, &c. have or	} had been loved.	
		2 esses vel fuisses,	2 Thou mightst, &c. have or		
		3 esset vel fuisset :	3 He might, &c. have or		
Plur.	{	1 Am-ati { 1 essemus vel fuissetis,	1 We might, &c. have or	} had been loved.	
		2 essetis vel fuissetis,	2 Ye might, &c. have or		
		3 essent vel fuissent.	3 They might, &c. have or		

Futurum.			The Future.		
Sing.	{	1 Am-atus { 1 fuero,	1 I shall have been	} loved.	
		2 fueris,	2 Thou shalt have been		
		3 fuerit :	3 He shall have been		
Plur.	{	1 Am-ati { 1 fuerimus,	1 We shall have been	} loved.	
		2 fueritis,	2 Ye shall have been		
		3 fuerint.	3 They shall have been		

IMPERATIVUS Modus. The IMPERATIVE Mood.

Præfens.			The Present.		
Sing.	{	2 Am-are vel -ator,	2 Be thou loved,	} loved.	
		3 Am-ator ;	3 Let him be loved ;		

Plur. { 2 Am-amini,
3 Am-antor.

2 Be ye loved,
3 Let them be loved.

INFINITIVUS Modus.

The INFINITIVE Mood.

Præs. Am-ari.

To be loved.

Perf. Am-atum esse vel fuisse.

To have or had been loved.

Fut. Am-atum iri.

To be about to be loved.

PARTICIPIA.

The PARTICIPLES.

Perfecti temporis, Am-atus,

-a -um. Of the Perfect, Loved.

Futuri, Am andus,

-a -um. Of the Fut. To be loved.

Secunda Conjugatio.

V O X A C T I V A.

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere.

INDICATIVUS.

Sing.

Plur.

	I	2	3	I	2	3
Pr.	Doceo, -es,	-et :	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.	
Im.	Doc-ebam, -ebas,	-ebat :	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.	
Perf.	Doc-ui, -uisti,	-uit :	-uimus,	-uistis,	{ -uerunt, -uere.	
Plus.	Doc-ueram, -ueras,	-uerat :	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.	
Fut.	Doc-ebo, -ebis,	-ebit :	-ebimus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.	

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Doc-eam, -eas,	-eat :	-eamus, -eatis,	-eant.
Im.	Doc-erem, -eres,	-eret :	-eremus, -eretis,	-erent.
Perf.	Doc-uerim, -ueris,	-uerit :	-uerimus, -ueritis,	-uerint.
Plus.	Doc-uisssem, -uisses,	-uisset :	-uisssemus, -uissetis,	-uissent.
Fut.	Doc-uerio, -ueris,	-uerit :	-uerimus, -ueritis,	-uerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Doc.	{ -e, -eto,	-eto:	{ -ete, -etote,	-ento.
------------	----------------	-------	--------------------	--------

INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIA.

Præs. Doc-ere.	1 Doc-tum.	Pr. Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,
Perf. Doc-uisse.	2 Doc-tu.	Fut. Doc-turus.	Doc-cendi,
Fut. Doc-turum esse vel fuisse.			Doc-endo.

V O X P A S S I V A.
Doceor, doctus, doceri.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. Doc-eor,	{ -eris, -etur : -emur, -emini, -entur.
Im. Doc-ebar,	{ -ebaris, -ebatur : -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
Fut. Doc-ebor,	{ -eberis, -ebitur : -ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Pr. Doc-ear,	{ -earis, -eatur : -eamur, -eamini, -eantur.
Im. Doc-erer,	{ -ereris, -eretur : -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.

I M P E R A T I V U S.

Præs. Doc-	{ -ere, -etor : -emini, -entor.
------------	---------------------------------

I N F I N I T I V U S.

Præs. Doc-eri.
Perf. Doc-tum esse *vel* fuisse.
Fut. Doc-tum iri.

P A R T I C I P I A.

Perf. Doc-tus, -a, -um.
Fut. Doc-endus, -a, -um.

Tertia Conjugatio,

V O X A C T I V A.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing.

Plur.

	I	2	3	I	2	3
Præs. L	Eg-o,	-is,	-it :	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
Imp. L	Leg-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat :	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf. Leg-i,		-isti,	-it :	-imus,	-istis,	-erunt -ere.
Plus. Leg-eram,		-eras,	-erat :	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
Fut. Leg-am,		-es,	-et :	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Præs. Leg-am,	-as	-at :	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
Imp. Leg-erem,	-eres,	-eret :	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.

Perf. Leg-erim, -eris, -erit : -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
 Plus. Leg-issem, -isses, -isset : -issemus, -isseries, -issent.
 Fut. Leg-ero, -eris, -erit : -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Leg- { -e, -ito : { -ite, -unto.
 { -ito, { itote,

INFINITIVUS. SUPINA PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIA.

Præs. Leg-ere.	1 Lec-tum.	Pr. Leg-ens.	Leg-endum,
Perf. Leg-isse.	2 Lec-tu.	Fut. Lec-turus.	Leg-endi,
Fut. Lec-turum esse vel fuisse.			Leg-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Legor, lectus, legi.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.	Plur.
Pr. Leg-or,	{ -eris, -itur : -imur, -imini, -untur.	
Im. Leg-ebat	{ -ebaris, -ebatur : -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.	
Fut. Leg-ar,	{ -eris, -etur : -emur, -emini, -entur.	

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Leg-ar,	{ -aris, -atur : -amur, -amini, -antur.
Im. Leg-erer,	{ -ereris, -eretur : -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Leg- { -ere, -itor : -imini, -untor.
 { -itor,

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Leg-i.
 Perf. Lec-tum esse vel fuisse.
 Fut. Lec-tum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Perf. Lec-tus, -a, -um.
 Fut. Leg-endus, -a, -um.

Quarta Conjugatio.

V O X A C T I V A.

Audio, *audivi, auditum, audire.*

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. **A**^Iud-io, ²-is, ³-it : ^I-imus, ²-itis, ³-iunt.
Im. Aud-*iebam*, *iebas*, *iebat* : *iebamus*, *iebatis*, *iebant*.
Perf. Aud-*ivi*, *ivisti*, *ivit* : *ivimus*, *ivistis*, *iverunt*,
Plus. Aud-*iveram*, *iveras*, *iverat* : *iveramus*, *iveratis*, *iverant*.
Fut. Aud-*iam*, *ies*, *iet* : *iemus*, *ietis*, *ient*.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Pr. Aud-*iam*, *ias*, *iat* : *iamus*, *iatis*, *iant*.
Im. Aud-*irem*, *ires*, *iret* : *iremus*, *iretis*, *irent*.
Perf. Aud-*iverim*, *iveris*, *iverit* : *iverimus*, *iveritis*, *iverint*.
Plus. Aud-*ivissem*, *ivisses*, *ivisset* : *ivissemus*, *ivissetis*, *ivissent*.
Fut. Aud-*ivero*, *iveris*, *iverit* : *iverimus*, *iveritis*, *iverint*.

I M P E R A T I V U S.

Pr. Aud- { ⁻ⁱ, ^{-ito}, ^{-ito} : { ^{-ite}, ^{-itote}, ^{-iunto}.

I N F I N I T I V U S. S U P I N A. P A R T I C I P I A. G E R U N D I A.

<i>Pr.</i> Aud- <i>ire</i> .	1 Aud- <i>itum</i> .	<i>Pr.</i> Aud- <i>iens</i> .	Aud- <i>iendum</i> ,
<i>Perf.</i> Aud- <i>ivisse</i> .	2 Aud- <i>itu</i> .	<i>Fut.</i> Aud- <i>iturus</i> .	Aud- <i>iendi</i> ,
<i>Fut.</i> Aud- <i>iturum</i> esse vel fuisse.			Aud- <i>iendo</i> .

V O X P A S S I V A.

Audior, *auditus, audiri.*

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. Audior, { ^{-iris}, ^{-ire}, ^{-itur} : ^{-imur}, ^{-imini}, ^{-iuntur}.
Im. Aud-*iebar*, { ^{-iebaris}, ^{-iebatur} : ^{-iebamur}, ^{-iebamini}, ^{-iebantur}.
Fut. Aud-*iar*, { ^{-ieris}, ^{-ietur} : ^{-iemur}, ^{-iemini}, ^{-ientur}.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Pr. Aud-*iar*, { ^{-iaris}, ^{-iare}, ^{-iatur} : ^{-iamur}, ^{-iamini}, ^{-iantur}.
Im. Aud-*irer*, { ^{-ireris}, ^{-iretur} : ^{-iremur}, ^{-iremini}, ^{-irentur}.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pres. Aud. { -ire, -itor : -imini, -iuntor.

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIA.

Pres. Aud. iri.

Perf. Aud. itum esse *vel* fuisse.

Fut. Aud. itum iri.

Perf. Aud. itus, -a, -um.

Fut. Aud. iendus, -a, -um.

Note, That in the Examples of the Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations, we have omitted such Parts of the Passive Voice as are supplied by the Participle-perfect with the Verb Sum, viz. The Perfect and Plu-perfect of the Indicative, and the Perfect, Plu-perfect and Future of the Subjunctive, as being the same in all Conjugations with the Example of the First, the Change of the Participle only excepted: But it is carefully to be observed, that the Participle being an Adjective, must agree in Gender, Number and Case, with its Substantive, or (which is the same thing) with the Person before it.

I. REMARKS shewing when a LATIN Verb is to be rendered otherwise in ENGLISH than in the foregoing Examples.

1. WHEN the Continuation of a Thing is signified, the English Verb may be varied in all its Tenses by the Participle in ING, with the Verb AM; as,

Pres. I am reading,	} for }	I read.
Imp. I was reading,		I did read.
Perf. I have been reading,		I have read.
Plup. I had been reading,		I had read.
Fut. I shall be reading,		I shall read.

So likewise in the Passive Voice, The House is building, Domus ædificatur, The Lesson was prescribing, Lectio præscribebatur. Sometimes a is set before the Participle; as, While the House is a building, It is a doing, He is a dying.

2. When a Question is asked, the Nominative Case or Person is set after the Verb, or the Sign of the Verb; as, Love I? Do I love? Can I love? Should he be loved?

3. We have made THOU the second Person singular, to distinguish it from the Plural. But it is customary with us, (as also with the French and others) tho' we speak but to one particular Person, to use the Plural YOU; and never THOU, but when we address ourselves to Almighty God, or otherwise when we signify Familiarity, Disdain, or Contempt.

4. The Perfect of the Indicative is often Englished as the Imperfect; as Nunquam amavi hunc hominem, I never loved [or, did love] this Man.

See a Train of Examples in *Ovid. Metamorph. lib. 1. from v. 21 to 39.*

5. The PERFECT Tense is frequently Englished by HAD after *Antequam, Postquam, Ubi* or *Ut* for *Postquam*; as, *Postquam superavimus Isthmum*, After we had [were] past over the Isthmus, *Ovid. Hec abi dicta dedit*, When he had spoken these Words, *Liv. Ut me salutavit, statim Romam profectus est*, After he had saluted me, &c. *Cic.*

6. We have chosen MAY, CAN, MIGHT, COULD, &c. for the English of the SUBJUNCTIVE Mood, because these are the most frequent Signs of it, and distinguish it best from other Moods; but very often it is the same with the Indicative, save only that it hath some Conjunction or Indefinite Word before it; such as, *If, Seeing, Lest, That, Although, I wish, &c.* as, *Si amem*, If I love; *Ne amem*, Lest I love; *Causa est cur amem*, It is the Cause why I love, *Ovid.* And frequently it hath both; as, *Oro ut ames*, I intreat that you may love, *Idem.*

7. The PRESENT of the Subjunctive after *Quasi, Tanquam*, and the like, is sometimes Englished as the Imperfect; as, *Quasi intelligant qualis sit*, As if they understood what kind of Person he is, *Cic.*

8. When a Question is asked, the Present of the Subjunctive is frequently Englished by SHALL or SHOULD; as, *Eloquar an fileam?* Shall I speak or be silent? *Virg. Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? *Ovid.* Likewise after *Non est quod*; as, *Non est (supple causa) quod eas*, There is no Reason why you should go, or you need not go. Sometimes it is Englished by WOULD; as, *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think they had sworn to [commit] Wickedness, *Ovid.*

9. We have Englished the PERFECT of the Subjunctive in RIM by MAY HAVE, (as, *Ne frustra hi tales viri venerint*, That such Men as these may not have come in vain, *Cic. Forfitan audieris*, You may perhaps have heard it;) to distinguish it from the Present and Pluperfect, by the Signs of which it is also most frequently Englished; as, *Ut sic dixerim*, That I may so speak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* Where should I have heard it? *Unus homo tantas strages ediderit?* Could one Man make so great a Slaughter? *Virg. Fortasse errarim*, Perhaps I might be in an Error, *Plin. Oratores quos viderim peritissimi*, The ablest Orators I have seen [or could see] *Quintil.*

10. This Perfect in RIM sometimes inclines very much to a Future Signification, and then it is Englished by SHOULD, WOULD, COULD, CAN, WILL, SHALL; as, *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, *Juv. Libenter audierim*, I would gladly hear, *Cic. Ciceronem cuicumque eorum facile opposuerim*, I could easily match Cicero with any of them, *Quintil. Non facile dixerim*, I cannot well tell, *Cic. Nec tamen excluderim alios*, And yet I will not exclude others, *Plin. Si paululum modo quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, If you but trip in the least, I shall be undone, *Ter.* But all those Ways of speaking, tho' indeed they respect the Future as to the Execution, yet they seem also to look a little beyond it, to a time when their Futurity shall be past; and so come near in Signification to the Future in RO.

11. The Perfect of the Subjunctive after *Quasi, Tanquam*, and the like, may sometimes be Englished by HAD; as, *Quasi affuerim*, As if I had been present, *Plaut. Perinde ac si jam vicerint*, As if they had already overcome, *Cic.*

12. The-PLUPERFECT in ISSEM is sometimes Englished by SHOULD, as, *Imperaret quod vellet, quodcunque imperavisset, se esse facturos*, He might command what he pleased, whatever he commanded, [should command] they would do, *Ces. Fœdus istum est his legibus, ut cujus populi cives eo certamine vicissent, is alteri imperaret*, An Agreement was made on these

Terms, that that People whose Countrymen should be victorious in that Combat, should have the Sovereignty over the other, *Liv.* And this happens when a Thing is signified as future at a certain past Time referred to, and commonly takes Place, when what was formerly said directly, is afterwards recited indirectly; as, *Ne dubita, dabitur quodcumque optaris*, Doubt not whatsoever thou shalt choose shall be given thee, *Ovid. Sol Phaëthonti facturum se esse dixit, quicquid optasset*, The Sun told Phaëthon that he would do whatsoever he should choose, *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, That what was the Future of the Subjunctive in the direct Speech, becomes the Plu-perfect in the indirect Recital of it. See *Turner's Exercises*, p. 21, &c. But, as we have said, p. 30 the Plu-perfect notwithstanding its coming in the Place of a Future, still retains its own proper compound Time, that is, it was prior to a Thing now past at the Time of the Recital by *Cicero*, tho' it was future when first spoken by the Sun. And therefore there is no Reason for making this Termination *issem*, a Future Tense, as Mr. *Turner* does.

13. Tho' the proper English of the FUTURE in RO be SHALL HAVE, yet generally the HAVE or the SHALL, and frequently both, are omitted, as, *Qui Antonium oppresserit, is bellum confecerit*, He who shall cut off *Antony*, shall put an End to the War. *Cic. Haud desinam donec perfecero hoc*, I will not give over till I have effected this, *Ter. Si negaverit*, If he denies it, *Cic.* Sometimes it is Englished by WILL; as, *Dixerit fortasse aliquis*, Somebody will perhaps say, *Cic. Aut consolando, aut consilio, aut re, juvero*, I will assist you either by comforting you, or with Counsel, or with Money, *Idem*. But tho' we thus render the Future in RO in our Language, (and tho' (which is more material) very frequently it and the Future of the Indicative are used promiscuously), yet I cannot be persuaded that in any Instance the formal Significations of these are the same, as Mr. *Johnson* contends, p. 339. but still think with the great *Vossius*, that the Future in RO is always a Future-perfect, that is, that there is a Time insinuated when a thing yet future shall be finished or past; and that even when a Future of the Indicative is joined with it, which in Order of Time should be done before it; as, *Pergratum mihi feceris si disputabis*, You shall have done, [shall do] me a great favour, if you shall dispute, *Cic.* For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the finishing of an Action yet future, without formally considering the finishing of another Action on which it depends; and on the contrary? But if the promiscuous Usage of Tenses one for another be sufficient to make them formally the same, then we shall confound all Tenses, and overthrow the very Arguments Mr. *Johnson* makes use of against *Saxtus*, with respect to the Tenses of the Infinitive.

14. The TO of the INFINITIVE is generally omitted after *May*, *Can*, *Might*, *Would*, *Could*, (which are sometimes Verbs themselves, and not the bare Signs of them :) also after *Must*, *Bid*, *Dare*, *Let*, *Help*, and *Make*.

15. But what is most to be regarded in the Infinitive is, that when it hath an Accusative before it, it is commonly Englished as the Indicative Mood, the Particle THAT being sometimes put before it, but oftner understood. And it is carefully to be remarked, That the same Tenses of the Infinitive are differently Englished, according as the preceeding Verb varies its Tenses; as will appear in the following Scheme:

{	<i>Dicit me scribere,</i>	He says [that] I write.
{	<i>Dixit me scribere,</i>	He said [that] I was writing.
{	<i>Dicet me scribere,</i>	He shall say [that] I am writing.

<i>Dicit me scripsisse,</i>	He says [that] I wrote, or did write.
<i>Dixit me scripsisse,</i>	He said [that] I had written.
<i>Dicet me scripsisse,</i>	He shall say [that] I have written, or did write.
<i>Dicit me scripturum, [esse,]</i>	He says [that] I will write.
<i>Dixit me scripturum, [esse,]</i>	He said [that] I would write.
<i>Dicet me scripturum, [esse,]</i>	He shall say [that] I will write.
<i>Dicit me scripturum [fuisse,]</i>	He says [that] I would have written.
<i>Dixit me scripturum, [fuisse,]</i>	He said [that] I would have written.
<i>Dicet me scripturum, [fuisse,]</i>	He shall say [that] I would have written.

It will be of great Use to accustom the Learner to render the Infinitive after this Manner, both in *English* and *Latin*, especially after he has been taught something of Construction : And then to cause him vary the Accusative *Me* into *te, se, illum, hominem, feminam, &c.* and these again into the Plural, *Nos, vos, se, illos, homines, feminas, &c.* But he must be careful to make the Participles agree with them in Gender, Number, and Case.

NOTE, 1. That when the preceeding Verb is of the *Present* or *Future* Tense, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* with *esse*, is rendered by **SHALL** or **WILL** ; and when it is of the *Perfect* Tense, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* is rendered by **WOULD**, as in the Examples above ; and sometimes by **SHOULD** ; as *Dixi te sciturum esse*, I said that you should know.

NOTE, 2. That when the preceeding Verb is of the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* Tenses, the *English* of the *Infinitive* is the same as when it is of the *Perfect*.

16. The *Perfect* of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive Passive*, made up with *Sum* or *Sim*, are Englished by **AM, ART, IS ARE**, instead of **HAVE BEEN**, when the Thing is signified to be just now past ; as, *vulneratus sum*, I am wounded ; *Opus finitum est*, the Work is finished ; *Cum temporibus mutata sint*, Since the Times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui*, it is frequently Englished by **WAS, WAST, WERE, WERT**, as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken ; As is also what is called the *Plu-perfect*, with *eram* and *essem* ; as, *Labor finitus erat*, the Labour was finished ; *Si labor finitus esset*, If the Labour were finished.

II. REMARKS on the LATIN Conjugations.

1. A Great Part of the *Passive Voice*, and some of the *Active*, is made up of two of its own *Participles* and the auxiliary Verb *Sum*, (of which you have the full Conjugation, p. 52.) after this Manner :

The Participle Perfect with	<i>Sum</i> or <i>fui</i>	makes the	Perf.	} Indicat.	} Passive.
	<i>eram</i> or <i>fueram</i>		Plup.		
	<i>sim</i> or <i>fuerim</i>		Perf.	} Subjunct.	
	<i>essem</i> or <i>fuissem</i>		Plup.		
	<i>fuero</i>		Fut.	Infinit.	
The Participle Fut. Act. with	<i>esse</i> or <i>fuisse</i>	}	Perf.	}	Active.
	<i>esse</i> or <i>fuisse</i>		Fut.		

2. Having p. 50. laid it down as a probable Opinion, that every Part of a Verb, with all its *Participles* have a certain fixt Time, simple or compound, which they formally and of their own Nature signify, it will perhaps be here expected, that I should account for that great Variety that is found

in the Passive Voice. To put this Matter in the clearest Light I am able, I must premise another Division of the *Tenses*, viz. into PASSING and PAST; or into such as import the Continuance of an Action or Thing, without regard to the ending or finishing of it; and such as import that the Thing is finished (or to be finished) and done. Of the first sort are the *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future-imperfect*; of the second sort are the *Perfect*, *Plu-perfect*, and *Future-perfect*, See p. 29. From this Division of the *Tenses*, together with what we have formerly said, we are furnished with an easy Method of distinguishing all the Parts of the Passive. Thus, for Instance, let the Subject of Discourse be the building of an House. 1. When I say, *Domus adificatur*, I mean that it is just now a building, but not finished. 2. When *Ædificabatur*, that it was then, or at a certain past Time, a building, but not then finished. 3. *Ædificabitur*, that some time hence it shall be a building, without any formal Regard to the finishing of it. But when I make use of the *Participle perfect*, I always signify a Thing compleated and ended; but with these Subdistinctions, 1. *Ædificata est*; I mean simply, that it is finished, without any regard to the Time when. 2. *Ædificata fuit*; it is finished, and some time since has interveened. 3. *Ædificata erat*, it was finished at a certain past Time referred to, with which it was contemporary. 4. *Ædificata fuerat*; it was finished before a certain past Time referred to, to which it was prior. 5. *Ædificata erit*; it shall be finished some Time hereafter, either without regard to a particular Time when, or with respect to a certain Time yet future, with which its finishing shall be contemporary. 6. And lastly, *Ædificata fuerit*; it shall be finished and past before another Thing yet future, to which its finishing shall be prior. And thus we have nine different Times or Complications of Times, without confounding them with one another. But, then, how comes it to pass that these are so frequently used promiscuously? I answer, That this proceeds from one or more of these four Reasons, 1. Because it very frequently happens in Discourse, that we have no Occasion particularly to consider these various Relations and Complications of Times; and 'tis the same Thing to our Purpose whether the Thing is, or was, done, or a doing; or whether it was done just now, or some time ago; or whether another Thing was (or shall be) contemporary with, or prior, to it; and the Matter being thus, we reckon ourselves at liberty to take several Parts of the Verb at random, as being secure not only of being understood, but also that in these Circumstances whatever we pitch on, even when examined by the Rules above, shall be found literally true. 2. It is usual with us to state ourselves as present with, and as it were Eye-witnesses of the Things we relate, tho' really they were transacted long before, whence it is that we frequently use the Present instead of some past Time. 3. 'Tis to be remarked, that there are some Verbs, the Action whereof is in some Sense finished when begun; in which Case it will sometimes be all one whether we use the passing or past Tenses. And, 4. The Present Tense (which strictly speaking is gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a larger Acceptation, and sometimes used for the Future, when we signify that the Execution is very near, or (according to *Perizonius*) when together with the Action we take in also the Preparation to it. The Brevity we are confined to will not allow us to illustrate these Things with Examples. But by them I think we may account for the promiscuous Usage of the Tenses, in both Voices; and what cannot be reduced to these, seems to be an Abuse of the Language, and being very rarely to be met with, and perhaps only amongst the Poets, ought not to be made a common Standard.

I shall only add for a Proof, that these Tenses are not always to be used indifferently; that when we signify a thing to be just now finished, we cannot use *fui* or *fuerim*, or *fuisse*; but *sum*, *sim*, and *esse*.

3. Whether the Learner should be obliged to get by Heart these Parts of the *Passive* that are supplied by *Sum*, or if they should be referred to Construction (to which they seem more naturally to belong) I leave to the Discretion of the Master, and therefore have put them in a smaller Character.

4. Besides these Parts which are thus made up, all the other Parts may be resolved into its own Participles, and the Verb *Sum*, tho' their Significations are not precisely the same; as,

<i>Amo,</i>	<i>amabam,</i>	<i>amavi,</i>	<i>amaueram,</i>	<i>amabo.</i>
<i>Sum amans,</i>	<i>eram amans,</i>	<i>fui amans,</i>	<i>fueram amans,</i>	} <i>ero amans, or</i> <i>sum amaturus.</i>
<i>Amor,</i>	<i>amabar,</i>	<i>amabor,</i>	<i>amer,</i>	
<i>Sum amatus,</i>	<i>eram amatus,</i>	<i>ero amatus.</i>	<i>amatus sim,</i>	<i>amatus essem.</i>

5. The Participle in *RUS* with the Verb *SUM* is frequently used instead of the *Future* of the *Indicative*, especially if *Purpose* or *Intention* is signified; as, *Profecturus sum*, or *Proficiscar*, I will go, or I am to go; and with *Sim* and *essem* instead of the *Future-imperfect*, or *Plu-perfect* of the *Subjunctive*; as, *Non dubito quin sit facturus*, I doubt not but he will do it; *Non dubitavi quin esset facturus*, I doubted not but he would do it; and not *quin fecerit*, or *faceret*, or *fecisset*.

6. We have not joined *ERO* with *FUERO* for the *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, because we thought it incongruous to couple Words of different Moods: Tho' it must be owned that it comes nearer in Signification to the *Fut.* of the *Subjunctive* than that of the *Indicative*; as, *Ovid. Qui cum victus erit*, is much the same as *victus fuerit*: And so these ancient Lawyers, *Scaevola*, *Brutus*, and *Manilius*, understood the Words of the *Attinian Law*, *Quod subreptum erit, ejus rei aeterna auctoritas esto*. But that a *Preterite* Time is there insinuated, is owing not to the Word *erit*, but to the *Preterite-participle* with which it is joined, as they learnedly argue. See *Aulus Gellius*, lib. XVII. cap. 7.

7. We have omitted the Termination *MINOR* in the second Person Plural of the *Imperative*, not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary Standard (as the common *Rudiments* do,) which is to be found only once or twice in *Plautus*, *Epid. 5. 2. Facto opere arbitraminor*. And *Pseud. 2. 2. Pariter progrediminor*.

8. For the same Reason we have excluded the ancient Termination *ASSO* in the *Future Subjunctive* of the first Conjugation; as, *Excantasso* in the Laws of the 12 Tables. *Levasso* in *Ennius*, *Abjurasso*, *Invitasso*, *Caenasso*, *Irritasso*, *Servasso*, &c. in *Plautus*; for *Excantavero*, *Levavero*, &c. to which may be added *ESSO* of the second Conjugation; as, *Licessit*, *Idem*; *prohibessit*, *Cic.* for *Licuerit*, *prohibuerit*: To these some add *Jusso* for *jussero* in that of *Virg. Aen. 11. v. 467*.

Cetera, qua jusso, mecum manus inferat arma.

But tho' I was once of that Opinion, yet I now incline with *Vossius* to think that it is only a *Syncope*; but not for the Reason brought for it by him, namely, that the other Examples in *ss* change *r* into *ss*, as, *Levaro*, *levasso*; but because I believe these old Futures were formed not from the common Futures in *ero*, as he supposes, but from the second Person sing. of the Present of the Indic. by adding *so*; as, *levas*, *levasso*; *prohibes*, *prohibesso*: According to which Rule *Jubeo* must have formed *jubeesso*, not *jusso*.

9. Upon the same Account we have omitted the Future of the Infinitive in ASSERE formed from ASSO ; as *Impetrassere, reconciliassere, expugnassere*, in *Plautus*, for *impetraturum esse, &c.*

10. Tho' we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus esse vel fuisse &c.* in the Nominative, as, *Dicitur amaturus esse*, yet we have contented ourselves with the Accusative *amaturum* and *amatum*, as most common, reserving the Distinction between these to Construction. [See Page 77.]

11. The Future of the Infinitive Passive is made up of the First Supine and IRI the Infinitive Passive of EO : And therefore it is not varied in Numbers and Genders, as the Parts made up of the Participle with Sum.

12. But the Supine with IRE is not the Future of the Infinitive Active, as some teach ; for such Phrases as these, *Amatum ire, Doctum ire*, are rather of the Present than Future Tense.

13. The Participle in DUS with *esse* and *fuisse*, is not properly the Future of the Infinitive Passive, as is commonly believed : For it does not so much import Futurity, as Necessity, Duty, or Merit. For there is a great Difference between these two Sentences, *Dicit literas à se scriptum iri*. and *Dicit literas à se scribendas esse* ; the first signifying, That a Letter will be written by him, or, That he will write a Letter ; and the second, That a Letter must be written by him, or, He is obliged to write a Letter. For though *Sanctius* and *Messieurs de Port Royal* contend that this Participle is sometimes used for simple Futurity, yet I think *Perizonius* and *Johnson* have clearly evinced the contrary.

14. It is to be noted, That the Imperative Mood wants the first Person both singular and Plural, because no Man can or needs command or exhort himself ; Or, if he does, he must juggle himself out of the first into the second Person, as in that of *Catullus* speaking to himself, *At tu Catulle, destinatus obdura* ; But you *Catullus*, continue obstinate.

15. The Present of the Subjunctive is most frequently used instead of the Imperative, especially in forbidding, after *Ne, nemo, nullus, &c.* as, *Valeas*, Farewell, for *vale* ; *Ne facias*, Do it not, rather than *Ne fac*. And sometimes the Future of the Subjunctive ; as, *Tu videris*, See you to it. *Ne dixeris*, Don't say it. And sometimes also the Future of the Indicative ; as *Non occides*, Thou shalt not kill, for *Ne occide*, or *occidito*, *Sed valebis, meaque negotia videbis*, Cic. i. e. *Sed vale, meaque negotia vide*. *Referes ergo hac & nuncius ibis Pelida genitori*, Virg. i. e. *refer & ito*. But it is to be remarked, that none of these are proper Imperatives ; for to the first is understood, *oro, rogo, peto*, or the like, with *ut* ; as also to the second, *ut* understood, or *ne* express ; and the third is only a Command by Consequence, because of the Authority, Influence or Power of the Speaker. For which Reason, and to keep the Moods from interfering with one another, we have excluded these from the Imperative ; Though the common Rudiments take in the first. and *Alvarus* the second and third. However, it is observable, that we shew most Civility and Respect, when we use the Subjunctive, and most Authority by the Future of the Indicative, and NTO of the Imperative ; which last is the ordinary Strain in which Laws are delivered. But this Rule is not always followed.

16. The RIS of the second Person Passive is more usual than RE ; and ERUNT of the Perfect of the Indicative Active than ERE ; especially in Prose, in which, if a Vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

III. REMARKS upon ENGLISH Verbs.

1. **A**N English Verb hath only two Tenses, distinguished by different Terminations, and both in the *Active Voice*, viz. the *Present* and *Preterite*. The *Present* is the Verb itself, and the *Preterite* is commonly made by adding *ed* to it, or *d*, when it ends in *e*; as, *Fill*, *filled*; *Love*, *loved*.

2. All the other Parts of the *Active*, and the whole *Passive*, is made up of the Auxiliary Verbs *Do*, *Have*, *Shall*, *Will*, *May*, *Can*, and *Am*; as in Page 31. and in the Example, *To love*, Page 32. &c.

3. An English Verb hath different Terminations for the Persons of the singular Number. The *Present* hath three or four. The first Person is the Verb itself; the second ends in *est* or *st*; the third in *eth*, *es*, or *s*. The *Preterite* hath only two; the first commonly ending in *ed*, and the second in *est* or *st*. But the third Person singular of the *Preterite*, and all the Persons plural, both of it and the *Present*, cannot otherwise be distinguished than by the Nominatives before them; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the *Latin*.

4. We have two *Participles*, the *Present* ending always in *ing*, and the *Preterite* ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en* and *t*.

5. There are a great many *Irregular English Verbs*; but it is to be noted, 1. That that *Irregularity* relates only to the Termination of the *Preterite* Tense, and the *Passive Participle*. 2. That it reaches only such Words as are native, and originally *English*. 3. That it is to be found only in Words of one Syllable, or derived from Words of one Syllable. 4. That where the *Preterite* is regular, the *Passive Participle* is the same with it. Except *Hewed*, *Mowed*, *Shewed*, *Snowed*, *Sowed*; which have *Hewn*, *Mown*, *Shown*, *Snown*, *Sown*.

6. These *Irregularities* may be reduced to the following heads:

(1.) The *d* is changed into *t* after *c*, *ch*, *sh*, *f*, *k*, *p*, *x*; and after *s* and *th*, when pronounced hard; and sometimes after *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, when a short Vowel goes before it; as, *Plac't*, *Snatch't*, *Fish't*, *Walk't*, *Dwelt*, *Smelt*. But when a long Vowel goes before *p*, it is either shortened, or changed into a short one; as, *Kept*, *Slept*, *Wept*, *Crept*, *Swept*, *Leapt*, from *keep*, *sleep*, *weep*, *creep*, *sweep*, *leap*; as also sometimes before *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and *v* turned into *f*; as, *Feel*, *felt*; *Dream*, *dreamt*; *Mean*, *meant*; *Leave*, *left*.

(2.) When the *Present* ends in *d* or *t*, the *Preterite* is sometimes the same with it; as *Read*, *Cast*, *Hurt*, *Burst*, *Hit*, *Quit*; and when two Vowels precede, the last is left out; as, *Spread*, *spred*; *lead*, *led*; *Feed*, *fed*; *Bleed*, *bled*; *Meet*, *met*. When a Consonant comes before *d*, it is sometimes changed into *t*; as, *Bend*, *bent*; *Lend*, *lent*; *Send*, *sent*; *Rend*, *rent*; *Gird*, *girt*.

(3.) Most of the other irregular Verbs may be comprehended under the following Lists:

I. Such as have their *Preterite* and *Participle Passive* the same.

Awake, awoke.	Find, found.	Pay, paid.	Sting, stung.
Abide, abode.	Flee, fled.	Say, said.	Swing, swung.
Beseech, besought.	Fling, flung.	Seek, sought.	Swim, swum.
Bind, bound.	Grind, ground.	Sell, sold.	Teach, taught.
Bring, brought.	Gild, gilt.	Sit, sat.	Tell, told.
Buy, bought.	Hang, hung.	Shine, shone.	Think, thought.
Catch, caught.	Hear, heard.	Spin, spun.	Work, wrought.
Dig, dug.	Lay, laid.	Spring, sprung.	Win, won.
Drink, drunk.	Lose, lost.	Stand, stood.	Wind, wound.
Fight, fought.	Make, made.	Stick, stuck.	Wring, wrung.

II. Such as have the Preterite and Participle different; as,

Bear, bore, born.	Freeze, froze, frozen.	Shrink, shrank, shrunk.
Begin, began, begun.	Get, got, gotten.	Sink, sank, sunk.
Bid, bad, bidden.	Give, gave, given.	Slay, slew, slain.
Beat, beat, beaten.	Go, went, gone.	Slide, slid, slid.
Bite, bit, bitten.	Grow, grew, grown.	Smite, smote, smitten.
Blow, blew, blown.	Hew, hewed, hewn.	Strike, struck, stricken.
Chide, chid, chidden.	Hide, hid, hidden.	Speak, spoke, spoken.
Choose, chose, chosen.	Hold, held, holden.	Spit, spat, spitten.
Cleave, clove, cleft.	Know, knew, known.	Strive, strove, striven.
Come, came, come.	Ly, lay, lay'n.	Swear, swore, sworn.
Crow, crew, crow'd.	Ride, rode, ridden.	Swell, swell'd, swollen.
Dare, durst, dared.	Ring, rang, rung.	Take, took, taken.
Do, did, done.	Rise, rose, risen.	Tear, tore, torn.
Draw, drew, drawn.	Run, ran, run.	Thrive, thrived, thriven.
Drive, drove, driven.	See, saw, seen.	Throw, threw, thrown.
Eat, eat, eaten.	Seethe, sed, sodden.	Tread, trode, trodden.
Fall, fell, fallen.	Shake, shook, shaken.	Wear, wore, worn.
Fly, flew, flown.	Shear, shorn, shorn.	Weave, wove, woven.
Forake, forsook, forsaken.	Shoot, shot, shotten.	Write, wrote, written.

These Preterites, *Bare, Share, Sware, Tare, Ware, Clave, Gat, Begat, Forgat, Brake, Spake, Slang, Sprang, Swang, Wan, Stank, Sank*, are seldom used. But *Besech'd, Catch'd, Work'd, Digged, Gilded, Girded, Hang'd, Swam, Writ*, for *Besought, Caught, &c.* are frequently to be met with.

NOTE, 1. That when the Verb ends in one Consonant, that Consonant is for the most Part doubled before *ing, ed, est, edst, and eth*: as, *Worship, worshipping, worshipped, worshippeth*: As also before *en*; as, *Bid, bidden*.

NOTE, 2. That the APOSTROPHUS (which was become too common in English Verbs; as, *Lov'd, lov'st*, for *loved, lovest*;) begins now to be disused by the most polite Writers in Prose; but Poets still use it, though not so much as formerly.

NOTE, 3. That the Preterite Active and the Participle Passive (when one Word serves for both) are thus distinguished: When it hath nothing before it but the Nominative alone, or *have* or *had* with it, it is the Preterite Active; but when it hath any Part of the helping Verb *AM*; it is the Participle Passive.

EXCEPT *Come, Gone, Run, Set, Risen, Fallen, Grown, Withered*; and such like Intransitive Verbs, which have frequently the Passive Signs *AM, ART, &c.* instead of *HAVE* in the Perfect Tense, and *WAS, WAST, &c.* instead of *HAD* in the Plu-perfect; as, *Veni, I am come; Veneram, I was come*.

NOTE, 4. That tho' the Latin Perfect frequently answers both to *HAVE* and *DID*, (or the Preterite Termination *ED, &c.*) yet they seem to be thus distinguished. *DID* or *ED, &c.* respects a certain past Time, in which the Thing was finished or a finishing; as, *I wrote*, or *did write Yesterday*: *HAVE* either speaks of a Thing as but just now past, or at least does not refer to any particular Time that it happened at; as, *I have written my Letter*, i. e. just now; *I have read of Julius Caesar*, i. e. some time or other. The first of these is called the Preterperfect Definite, and the other the Preterperfect Indefinite.

NOTE, 5. That *SHALL* and *WILL*, by Mr. Brightland, are thus distinguished:

In the First Person simply **SHALL** foretells :
 In **WILL** a Threat, or else a Promise dwells,
SHALL in the Second and the Third does threat ;
WILL simply then foretells the Future Feat.

By Mr. Turner thus :

WILL imports the *Will* or *Purpose* of the Person it is joined with ;
SHALL implies the *Will* of another, who *promises* or *threatens* to do the
 Thing, or cause it to be done, *permits* it, *commands* it, or the like.

De Formatione Verborum.

Quatuor sunt Terminationes Verbi, à quibus reliquæ omnes formantur ; sciz. o Præsentis, i Præteriti, um Supini, & re Infinitivi, hoc modo ;

1. Ab o formantur - am & em.
2. Ab i formantur ram, rim, ro, ssem, & sse.
3. Ab um formantur u, us, & rus.
4. A re formantur reliquæ omnes ; nempe, bam, bo, rem, a, e, i, ns, dus, dum, di, do.

Of the Formation of Verbs.

THere are four Terminations of a Verb, from which all the rest are formed ; namely, o of the Present, i of the Preterite, um of the Supine, and re of the Infinitive, after this Manner ;

1. From o are formed am and em.
2. From i, ram, rim, ro, ssem, and sse.
3. U, us, and rus, are formed from um.
4. All other Parts from re do come ; as, bam, bo, rem, a, e, and i, ns, and dus, dum, do, and di.

In every complete Verb there are commonly four **PRINCIPAL PARTS**, viz. the Present of the Indicative in O, the Preterite or Perfect in I, the first Supine in UM, and the Present of the Infinitive in RE. The first (which is therefore called the **STEM** or Root of the Verb) gives Origin to the whole Verb, either mediately or immediately. The Preterite, the first Supine, and the Present of the Infinitive come from it immediately, and all the rest from them ; except the Future of the Indicative in am, and the Present of the Subjunctive in em or am, which, by this Scheme, are also formed immediately from the Present in O.

It is to be noted, that the Preterites and Supines of the First Conjugation end commonly in avi and atum, of the Second in ui and itum, and of the Fourth in iui and itum. But the Third Conjugation cannot be reduced to any general Rule ; and there are a great many Exceptions in the other three, which are therefore to be learned by daily Practice, till the Scholar is advanced to that Part of Grammar that treats particularly of them.

But the Present of the Infinitive, and all the other Parts of the Verb, are regularly formed after one fixt and uniform Manner.

In the foregoing Rules of Formation, I have, for the Ease of the Memory, put the Terminations instead of the Moods and Tenses ; but for the greater Plainness they may be thus expressed :

I. From the *Present* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Future* of the *Indicative* of the *Third* and *Fourth* Conjugations in *am*; and the *Present* of the *Subjunctive* of the *First* in *em*, and of the other three in *am*.

II. From the *Perfect* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Plu-perfect* of it, the *Perfect*, *Plu-perfect* and *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, and the *Perfect* of the *Infinitive*.

III. From the *First Supine* is formed the *Last Supine*, the *Participle Perfect* and *Future Active*.

IV. From the *Present* of the *Infinitive* are formed the *Imperfect* of the *Indicative*, the *Future* of the same when it ends in *BO*, (*viz.* in the first and second Conjugations) the *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*, the *Imperative*, the *Participles Present* and *Future Passive*, and the *Gerunds*.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs in *IO* of the *Third* Conjugation retain *i* before *unt*, *unto*, *ebam*, *am*, *ens*, *endus*, *endum*; but lose it in the *Present* of the *Infinitive* and *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*.

NOTE, 2. That the last *Person Plur.* of the *Imperative* may be formed by adding *o* to the same *Person* of the *Present* of the *Indicative*; as, *Amant*, *amanto*; *docent*, *docento*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Passive Voice* is formed from the same *Tenses* of the *Active*, (except where *Sum* is used) by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Present* of the *Infinitive Passive* of the *Third* Conjugation may be formed by taking *s* from the *Second Person* of the *Present* of the *Indicative Active*; as, *legis*, *legi*; or when the Verb is *Deponent*, by changing *or*, or *ior*, into *i*; as, *Proficiscor*, *Proficisci*; *mori*, *mori*.

NOTE, 5. That the *Present* of the *Infinitive Active*, and the *Second Person* of the *Indicative* and *Imperative Passive* in *re*, are always the same.

NOTE, 6. That the *Second Person Plural* of the *Present* of the *Indicative*, and of the *Imperative*, are the same in the *Passive Voice*.

NOTE, 7. That where any of the *Principal Parts* are wanting, these *Parts* are commonly wanting that come from them. For which Reason Grammarians give *Supines* to a great many Verbs, which yet are not to be found in any Author, because the *Participles* formed from them are found; and they suppose likewise all *Deponent* Verbs of old to have had the *Active Voice*, and consequently *Supines*, tho' now lost.

NOTE, 8. That all Verbs of the *Second* Conjugation end in *eo*, and all Verbs of the *Fourth* in *io*, except *eo* and *queo*. There are eight Verbs in *eo* of the *First* Conjugation, *viz.* *beo*, *creo*, *scireo*, *meo*, *calceo*, *laqueo*, *nausco*, *nucleo*. There are Twenty-four in *io* of the *First*, *viz.* *amplio*, *basio*, *brevio*, *consilio*, *crucio*, *furio*, *glacio*, *bio*, *lanio*, *luxurio*, *macio*, *nuncio*, *prio*, *propitio*, *radio*, *repudio*, *satio*, *saucio*, *socio*, *somnio*, *spolio*, *suavio*, or rather *suavior*, *vario*, *vitio*; with some other less common; as, *decurio*, *succenturio*, *fascio*, *retalio*, *strio*, *tertio*, &c. and Twelve of the *Third*, *viz.* *capio*, *facio*, *jacio*, *lacio*, *specio*, *fodio*, *fugio*, *cupio*, *rapio*, *sapio*, *pario*, *quatio*, with their Compounds.

It is not, in my Opinion, necessary to trouble the Learner with a particular Account how the respective Changes in the Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons, are made; they being obvious from the Examples above, in which I have distinguished them from the *Body* or *Essential Part* of the Verb by a *Division* or *Hyphen*. And perhaps this alone, without any other particular Rule, might be a sufficient Direction. For to conjugate one Verb by the Example of another, we have no more to do, but instead of the *Essential Part* of the one (which is all that stands before *o*, *eo* or *io*, of the *Present* of the *Indicative*) to substitute the *Essential Part*

of the other, and then to add to it the additional Syllables it receives in Conjugation, as before. Only we are to advert, 1. That in the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and the *Parts* that come from them, we are to retain all before *i* and *um* for the Body of the Verb, adding the usual Syllables to it, as in the *Active Voice* of *Lego*. 2. In Verbs in *io* we are to retain or omit the *i*, as in *Note 1*.

There is yet another Way of the Formation of Verbs, differing only from the First Method in this, that what Parts according to it are formed from the Infinitive, are by this formed from the First or Second Person of the Present of the Indicative. But tho' this may be the more natural Way, yet the other is more easy and uniform.

De Verbis Irregularibus.

IRREGULARIA Verba vulgò recensentur octo, viz. *Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero, & Fio, cum Compolitis.*

Of Irregular Verbs.

THE IRREGULAR Verbs are commonly reckoned Eight, viz. *Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero, and Fio, with their Compounds.*

S U M.

Sum, fui, esse, To be.

INDICATIVUS.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præsens.

*Sum, I am,
Es, Thou art,
Est : He is :
Sumus, We are,
Estis, Ye are,
Sunt. They are.*

*Sim, I may or can be.
Sis, Thou mayst or canst be,
Sit : He may or can be ;
Simus, We may or can be,
Sitis, Ye may or can be,
Sint. They may or can be.*

Imperfectum.

*Eram, I was,
Eras, Thou wast,
Erat : He was :
Eramus, We were,
Eratis, Ye were,
Erant. They were.*

*Essem, I might, &c. be,
Esset, Thou mightest be,
Esset : He might be :
Essemus, We might be,
Essetis, Ye might be,
Essent. They might be.*

Perfectum.

*Fui, I have been, Fuerim,
Fuisti, Thou hast been, Fueris,
Fuit : He hath been : Fuerit :
Fuimus, We have been, Fuerimus,
Fuistis, Ye have been, Fueritis,
Fuerunt, They have been. Fuerint.
v.-ere.*

*I may have been,
Thou mayst have been.
He may have been :
We may have been,
Ye may have been,
They may have been.*

Plusquam-perfectum.

Fueram,	I had been,	Fuissem,	I might, &c. have
Fueras,	Thou hadst been,	Fuisses,	Thou mightest have
Fuerat :	He had been :	Fuisset :	He might have
Fueramus,	We had been,	Fuissemus,	We might have
Fueratis,	Ye had been,	Fuissetis,	Ye might have
Fuerant,	They had been.	Fuissent.	They might have

or had been

Futurum.

Ero,	I shall or will be,	Fuero,	I shall have been,
Eris,	Thou shalt or wilt be,	Fueris,	Thou shalt have been,
Erit :	He shall or will be :	Fuerit :	He shall have been :
Erimus,	We shall or will be,	Fuerimus,	We shall have been,
Eritis,	Ye shall or will be,	Fueritis,	Ye shall have been,
Erunt.	They shall or will be.	Fuerint.	They shall have been.

IMPERATIVUS.

INFINITIVUS.

Presens.	Es vel	}	Be thou,	Præs. Esse.	To be.
	Esto,			Perf. Fuisse.	To have been.
	Esto :	}	Let him be :	Fut. Futurum	To be about
	Este vel			esse vel fuisse.	to be.
	Estote,		Be ye,		
	Sunto.		Let them be.	Fut. Futurus.	About to be.

PARTICIPIIUM.

The Compounds of SUM are, *Adsum, absum, desum, intersum, præsum, obsum, subsum, supersum, insum, prosum, & possum.* The first eight are conjugated as the simple SUM: *Insum* wants the Preterite and its Descendents; for we do not use *Infui, infuisti, infueram, &c.*

¶ **PROSUM**, *To do good*, has a *d* where **SUM** begins with *e*; as,

IND.	Pr. Pro-sum,	prod-es,	prod-est :	pro-sumus,	prod-estis,	pro-
	Im. Prod-eram,	prod-eras,	prod-erat :	prod-eramus,	&c.	[sunt.
SUB.	Im. Prod-essem,	prod-esses,	prod-esset :	prod-essemus,	&c.	

IMPERAT. Prod-esto, prod-este.

INFINIT. Præs. Prod-esse.

POSSUM should be *pot-sum*, (as being compounded of *potis*, able, and *Sum*) but for the better Sound *t* is changed into *s* before another *s*, and retained before any other Letter: And for the same Reason *s* is always taken away. *Possẽm* and *Posse* are contracted for *Poteffem, Poteffe*, which are yet to be found in some old Authors; thus,

¶ **Possam, potui, posse, To be able.**

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. Possam,	potes,	potest :	possumus,	potestis,	possunt.
Imp. Poteram,	poteras,	poterat :	poteramus,	poteratis,	poterant,
Perf. Potui,	potuisti,	potuit :	potuimus,	potuistis,	{ potuerunt, v. -uere,
Plus. Potueram,	potueras,	potuerat :	potueramus,	potueratis,	
Fut. Potero,	poteris,	poterit :	poterimus,	poteritis,	poterant.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Possim,	possis,	possit :	possimus,	possitis,	possint.
<i>Imp.</i> Possem,	posses,	posset :	possemus,	possetis,	possent.
<i>Perf.</i> Potuerim,	potueris,	potuerit :	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.
<i>Plus.</i> Potuissem,	potuisses,	potuisset :	potuissemus,	potuissetis,	potuissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Potuero,	potueris,	potuerit :	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Posse.*Perf.* Potuisse.

The rest wanting.

E O.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, To go.

INDICATIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Eo,	is,	it :	imus,	itis,	eunt.
<i>Imp.</i> Ibam,	ibas,	ibat :	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant.
<i>Perf.</i> Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit :	ivimus,	ivistis,	{ iverunt, v. ivere.
<i>Plus.</i> Iveram,	iveras,	iverat :	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
<i>Fut.</i> Ibo,	ibis,	ibit :	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i> Eam,	eas,	eat :	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
<i>Imp.</i> Irem,	ires,	iret :	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
<i>Perf.</i> Iverim,	iveris,	iverit :	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
<i>Plus.</i> Ivissim,	ivisses,	ivisset :	ivissemus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Ivero,	iveris,	iverit :	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. { I, ito : { ite, eunto.
 { ito, { itote,

{ *Præs.* Ire.
 { *Perf.* Ivisse.
 { *Fut.* Iturum esse vel fuisse.

PARTICIPIA.

SUPINA.

GERUNDIA.

Præs. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.
Fut. Iturus, -i, -um.

1 Itum.
2 Itu.

Eundum,
Eundi,
Eundo.

NOTE, 1. That in general EO is a Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

NOTE, 2. That of old, Verbs of the Fourth had their Imperfect in *ibam*, and Future in *iba*, of which there are many Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*, and some in *Virgil* and *Horace*.

After the same Manner the Compounds of EO are conjugated, viz. *Adeo*, *abeo*, *exeo*, *obeo*, *redeo*, *subeo*, *perceo*, *coëo*, *ineo*, *præeo*, *antæeo*, *prodeo*, *prætereo*, *trans eo*; *Adibam*, *adiibo*, *adiens*, *adeuntis*, *adeundum*, &c. But *ambio* is a regular Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

NOTE, That in the Compounds *ivi*, *ivisti*, &c. are seldom used, but they are contracted into *ii*, *iisti*; as, *adii*, *adiisti*, and sometimes *adiisti*: So *adieram*, *adierim*, &c.

QUEO, *I can*, and NEQUEO, *I cannot*, are conjugated the same Way as *EO*; they only want the *Imperative* and the *Gerunds*; and the *Participles* are scarcely in use.

V O L O.

Volo, volui, velle, *To will, or be willing.*

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Præs. Volo, vis, vult: volumus, vultis, volunt.
Imp. Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat: -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Perf. Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit: -uimus, -uistis, { -uerunt,
 v. -uere.
Plus. Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat: -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Volam, voles, voles: volemus, voletis, volent.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Præs. Velim, velis, velit: velimus, velitis, velint.
Imp. Vellem, velles, vellet: vellemus, velletis, vellent.
Perf. Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit: -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Plus. Vol-uisssem, -uisses, -uisset: -uisssemus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Vol-uerō, -ueris, -uerit: -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

I N F I N I T I V U S.

P A R T I C I P I U M.

Præs. Veile. *Perf.* Voluisse. *Præs.* Volens.
The rest are wanting.

N O L O.

Nolo, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling.*

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Præs. Nolo, non-vis, non-vult: nolumus, non-vultis, nolunt.
Imp. Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat: -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Perf. Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit: -uimus, -uistis, { -uerunt,
 v. -uere.
Plus. Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat: -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Nolum, noles, nolet: nolemus, noletis, nolent.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Præs. Nolim, nolis, nolit: nolimus, nolitis, nolint.
Imp. Nollem, nolles, nollet: nollemus, nolletis, nolent.

56 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Perf. Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit : -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Plus. Nol-uisssem, -uisses, -uisset : -uisssemus, -uissetis, -uissent.

Fut. Nol-uerro, -ueris, -uerit : -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

IMPERATIVUS. INFINITIVUS. PARTICIPIUM.

Pr. { Noli, { nolite, | *Pr.* Nolle. | *Præs.* Nolens.
 { Nolito : { nolitote. | *Per.* Noluisse. | *The rest wanting.*

M A L O.

Malo, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. Malo, mavis, mavult : malumus, mavultis, malunt.

Imp. Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat : -ebamus -ebatis, -ebant.

Perf. Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit : -uimus -uistis, { -uerunt,
 { v-vere.

Plus. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat : -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

Fut. Malam, males, malet, &c. *This is scarcely in Use.*

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs. Malim, malis, malit : malimus, malitis, malint.

Imp. Mallem, malles, mallet : mallemus, malletis, mallent.

Perf. Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit : -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Plus. Mal-uisssem, -uisses, -uisset : -uisssemus, -uissetis, -uissent.

Fut. Mal-uerro, -ueris, -uerit : -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Malle.

Perf. Maluisse.

NOTE, That *Volo*, *Nolo*, and *Malo*, retain something of the Third Conjugation ; for *Vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, are contracted of *Volis*, *volit*, *volitis* ; and *e* is changed in *u*, for, of old, they said *Volt*, *voltis*.

Nolo is compounded of *Neu volo*, and *Malo* of *Magis volo*.

F E R O.

VOX A C T I V A.

Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, *To bring or suffer.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. Fero, fers, fert : ferimus, fertis, ferunt.

Imp. Ferebam, ferebas, ferebat : ferebamus, ferebatis, ferebant.

Perf. Tuli, tulisti, tulit : tulimus, tulistis, { tulerunt,
 { v. tulere.

Plus. Tuleram, tuleras, tulerat : tuleramus, tuleratis, tulerant.

Fut. Feram, feres, feret : feremus, feretis, ferent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs. Feram, feras, ferat : feramus, feratis, ferant.
Imp. Ferrem, ferres, ferret : ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.
Perf. Tulerim, tuleris, tulerit : tulerimus, tuleritis, tulerint.
Plus. Tulissem, tulisses, tulisset : tulissemus, tulissetis, tulissent.
Fut. Tulero, tuleris, tulerit : tulerimus, tuleritis, tulerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Ferre.
Perf. Tulisse.
Fut. Laturum esse
 vel fuisse.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. { Fer, fertor : { ferte, ferunto.
 { Fertor, fertor : { fertote,

PARTICIPIA.

SUPINA.

GERUNDIA.

Præs. Ferens.

Fut. Laturus, -a, -um.

1. Latum.

2 Latu.

Ferendum,

Ferendi,

Ferendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Feror,

latus,

ferri.

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. Feror, { ferris, fertur : ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
 { ferre,

Imp. Fer-ebat, { -ebaris, -ebatur : -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
 { -ebare,

Perf. Latus sum vel fui, latus es vel fuisti, &c.

Plus. Latus eram vel fueram, latus eras vel fueras, &c.

Fut. Ferar, { fereris, feretur : feremur, feremini, ferentur.
 { ferere,

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs. Ferar, { feraris, feratur : feramur feramini, ferantur.
 { ferare,

Imp. Ferrer, { ferreris, ferretur : ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
 { ferrere,

Perf. Latus sum vel fuerim, latus sis vel fueris, &c.

Plus. Latus essem vel fuisset, latus esses vel fuisses, &c.

Fut. Latus fuero, latus fueris, &c.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. { Ferre, fertor : ferimini, feruntor.
 { fertor,

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIA.

Præs. Ferri.

Perf. Latum esse vel fuisse.

Fut. Latum iri.

Perf. Latus,

Fut. Ferendus,

-a, -um.

-a, -um.

58 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE, That *Fero* is a Verb of the Third Conjugation, *Fers, fert, fertis, fertis, ferte, ferrem, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor*; being contracted of *Feris, ferit, feritis, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, fereris, feritur* and *feritor*.

Also *Fer* is contracted of *fere*; which, in like Manner, has happened to the Imperatives of *Dico, duco, facio*, they having *dic, duc, fac*, instead of *dice, duce, face*.

The Compounds of *Fero* are conjugated the same Way as the Simple; as, *Affero, attuli, allatum*; *aufero, abstuli, ablatum*; *Differo, distuli, dilatum*; *Confero, contuli, collatum*; *Infero, intuli, illatum*; *Offero, obtuli, oblatum*; *Effero, extuli, elatum*; So *Circumfero, perfero, transfero, defero, profero, antefero, praefero*.

F I O.

Fio, factus, fieri, To be made, or to become.

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. *Fio, fis, fit: finus, fitis, fiunt.*
Imp. *Fiebam, fiebas, fiebat: fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.*
Perf. *Factus sum vel fui, factus es vel fuisti, &c.*
Plus. *Factus eram vel fueram, factus eras vel fueras, &c.*
Fut. *Fiam, fies, fiet: ficiemus, fietis, fient.*

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs. *Fiam, fias, fiat: fiamus, fiatis, fiánt.*
Imp. *Fierem, fieres, fieret: fieremus, fieretis, fierent.*
Perf. *Factus sim vel fuerim, factus sis vel fueris, &c.*
Plus. *Factus essem vel fuisset, factus esses vel fuisses, &c.*
Fut. *Factus fuero, factus fueris, &c.*

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr. { *Fi*, fito: fite, fiunto.*
{ *Fito, fitote,*

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. *Fieri.*
Perf. *Factum esse v. fuisse.*
Fut. *Factum iri.*

PARTICIPIA.

Perf. *Factus, -a, -um.*
Fut. *Faciendus, -a, -um.*

SUPINUM.

Factu.

* Tho' *Fi* is rejected by some Grammarians of great Note, yet we have given it a Place here, not only because it is to be found in *Plautus*, but also in *Horace, Lib. 2. Sat. 5. ver. 38, Fi cognitor ipse*, according to the best MSS. and Editions.

NOTE, 1. That *Fio* is the Passive of *Facio*, To make, (which is regular) instead of *Facior*, which is not in use : Yet the Compounds of *Facio*, which change *a* into *i*, are regular ; as, *afficio*, *affectus*, *affici* ; *perficio*, *perfectus*, *perfici*.

NOTE, 2. That the Compounds of *Facio*, with Verbs, Nouns or Adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their Imperat. A& *fac*, and their Passive Form (when used) *fio* ; as, *Calefacio*, *lucrifacio*, *benefacio* ; *calefac*, *calefio*, &c. But these compounded with a Preposition change the *a* into *i*, and have *fice* and *ficio*. There are some compounded of *Facio* and a Noun, where *facio* is changed into *fico* of the First Conjugation ; as, *magnifico*, *significo*.

To the Irregular Verbs may be reduced *EDO*, to eat, which in some of its Parts falls in with the Verb *Sum* ; thus,

IND.	Pras.	Edo,	es,	est :	estis,	
SUB.	Imp.	Essem,	esses,	esset :	essemus,	essetis, essent.
IMP.	Pras.	Es vel esto,	este vel estote.		INFIN.	Esse.

Likeways its Compounds, *Comedo*, *comes*, *comeſt*, &c. and *Exedo*, *exes*, *exeſt*, &c. But all these may likewise be regularly conjugated, *Edo*, *edis*, *edit*, &c. *Ederem*, *ederes*, *ederet*, &c.

Of Defective Verbs.

THO' some of the Irregular Verbs already mentioned want some of their Parts, and upon that Account may be called also *Defective* Verbs, yet by *DEFECTIVE* Verbs here we chiefly understand such as want considerable Branches, or are used only in few *Tenses* and *Persons*. We shall set down these that most frequently occur.

I. *AIO*, I say ; *INQUAM*, I say ; *FOREM*, I should be ; *AUSIM*, I dare ; *FAXIM*, I'll see to it, or I will do it ; *AVE* and *SALVE*, God save you, Hail, Good-morrow ; *CEDO*, Tell, or give me ; *QUÆSO*, I pray.

IND.	{	Pras.	Aio,	ais,	ait :	aiunt.
		Imp.	Ai-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat :	-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
		Perf.	aiſti,			
SUB.	Pras.	aias,	aiat :	aiatis,	aiant.	
IMPERAT. ai.						[PARTICIP. Pras. aiens.]

INDIC.	{	Pras.	Inquam, inquis, inquit :	inquimus, inquitis, inquirunt.
		Imp.	inquirebat :	inquirebant.
		Perf.	inquiſti,	
		Fut.	inquies, inquiet :	
IMPERAT. inque, -ito.			PARTICIP. Pras. inquiens.	

SUB.	{	Imp.	Forem, fores, foret :	foremus, foretis, forent.
		Plus.		

INF. Fore, to be, or to be about to be, the same with *futurume ſſe*.

SUB.	{	Pras.	Auſim,	auſis,	auſit :	faxint.
		Perf.	Faxim,	faxis,	faxit :	faxint.
		Fut.	Faxo,	faxis,	faxit :	faxitis, faxint.

NOTE, That *faxim*, and *faxo* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

IMPERAT.	{	Ave,	avete.	{	INF.	avere.
		Aveto,	avetote.			ſalvere.
		Salve,	ſalvete.			
		Salveto,	ſalvetote.			
		Cedo,	cedite.			
IND.	Pras.	Quæſo,	quæſumus.			

60 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

II. These three Verbs; ODI, MEMINI, COEPI, have only the *Preterite* Tense, and what is formed from it, and therefore are by some called *PRETERITIVE* Verbs; thus,

Odi, oderam, oderim, odissem, odero, odisse.
 Memini, memineram, meminere, meminisse.
 Cœpi, cœperam, cœperim, cœpissim, cœpero, cœpisse.

But under these they comprehend also the Signification of the other Tenses; as, *Memini*, I remember, or I have remembered; *Memineram*, I remembered, or I had remembered, &c. So *Odi*, I hate, or I have hated; *Cœpi*, I begin, or I have begun. Tho' I am not fully satisfied as to this last, for I do not know any Example where *Cœpi* doth clearly signify the present Tense.

Memini hath also the Imperative, *Memento*, Remember thou; *Mementote*, Remember ye. Some add *Meminens*, Remembering, which is scarcely to be imitated.

To these some add *NOVI*, because it frequently hath the Signification of the present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, tho' it comes from *Nosco*, which is complete.

NOTE, 1. That *Odientes* is to be found in *Petronius*; *Odiatur* in *Seneca*; *Cœpio* in *Plautus* and *Terence*. See *Voss. analog. lib. III. cap. 39.*

NOTE, 2. That the Participles *Cæptus* and *Osus*, with its Compounds, *Perosus*, *Exosus*, are in use among the best Authors; but *Perodi* and *Exodi* are not.

III. *Faris*, To speak, wants the first Person of the *Pres. Indic.* and perhaps the whole *Present* of the *Subjunctive*, for we do not say *For* or *Fer*, and rarely *Feris*, *fetur*, &c. So likewise *Daris* and *Deris*, but not *Dor* or *Der*. To be given. The Compounds of the first, as, *Effor*, *affor*, are rare; but the Compounds of the other, as, *Addor*, *Reddor*, are common.

IV. Most of the other defective Verbs are but single Words, and rarely to be found, but among Poets; as, *Infit*, he begins; *Desit*, it is wanting, Some are compounded of a Verb with the Conjunction *Si*, as *Sis* for *Si vis*, If thou wilt; *Sultis*, for *Si vultis*, If ye will; *Sodes*, for *Si audes*, If thou darest.

Of Impersonal Verbs.

These are also a kind of *Defective* Verbs, which for the most part are used only in the *Third Person Sing.* They have the Sign *IT* before them in English; as, *Pœnit*, It repents; *Placet*, It pleases; And are thus conjugated.

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Plusquamp.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
IND.	Pœnit	pœnitebat	pœnituit	pœnituerat	pœnitebit.
SUB.	Pœniteat	pœniteret	pœnituerit	pœnituisset	pœnituerit.
INF.	Pœnitere	.	pœnituisse.		

Most Verbs may be used impersonally in the *Passive Voice*, especially such as otherwise have no *Passive*; as,

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Plusquamp.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
Ind.	Pugnatur	pugnabatur	pugnatum est	-atum erat	pugnabitur.
Sub.	Pugnetur	pugnaretur	pugnatum sit	-atum fuisset	-atum fuerit.
Inf.	Pugnari	.	pugnatum esse		pugnatum iri.

Part II. Chap. IV. of Participle. 61

NOTE, 1. That IMPERSONALS are applied to any Person or Number, by putting that which stands before other Verbs, after the 1st personals, in the Cases which they govern: as, *pœnitēt me, te, illum*, I repent, thou repentest, he repenteth, instead of *Ego pœniteo*, &c. which is scarcely Latin. *Placet mihi, tibi, illi*, It pleases me, thee, him; or, I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c.

NOTE, 2. That Impersonals are not used in the Imperative, but instead of it we take the Subjunctive.

NOTE, 3. That Impersonal Verbs are very often used personally, especially in the Plural Number; as *Accidit, Contingit, Evenit, Pertinet, Decet, Dolet, Licet, Nocet, Patet, Placet, Praestat*, &c. For we say, *Tu mihi sola places*; *Nulli noceo*; *Multa homini accidunt, contingunt, eveniunt*; *Parvum parva decent*, &c. But it is to be remarked, that they are generally Impersonal, when an Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood follows; for tho' I can say, *Tu places mihi*, yet I cannot say, *Si places audire*, but *si placet tibi audire*. Again, we cannot say, *Ego contigi esse domi*, but *Me contigit esse domi*, or *Mihi contigit esse domi*. Likewise *Evenit illum mori*, or *Ut ille moreretur*, but not, *Ille evenit mori*.

[I shall not here enquire what is the Word understood to Impersonal Verbs, whether it is a Noun of the like Signification; as, *Pugna pugnatur*, or the Word *Res* or *Negotium*, or the Infinitive Mood. Tho' I incline to think that any one of these will not answer to them all, but that there are some to which the first, to others the second, and to others the third, may be most fitly understood, as the Nature of the Verb and good Sense shall direct us. This we are sure of, that the Word understood can never be a Person properly so called, but a Thing; for which Reason, and the Want of the two primary Persons, viz. the first and second, they are called Impersonal, tho' some are much offended with the Name.]

C A P. IV. De Participio.

Tria sunt præcipuè consideranda in Participio, viz. *Tempus, Significatio, & Declinatio*.

I. *Tempora Participiorum sunt Tria, Præsens, Præteritum, & Futurum.*

Participia	{	Præf.	{	Temp. de- clinant in	ns.
		Præt.			tus, sus, xus.
		Fut.			rus, dus.

II. *Significatio Participiorum est vel Activa, vel Passiva, vel Neutra, ad modum verborum à quibus descendunt.*

C H A P. IV. Of Participle.

There are three Things especially to be considered in a Participle, viz. *Time, Signification, and Declension.*

I. *The Tenses of Participles are three, the Present, Preterite, and Future.*

Particip. of the	{	Pres.	{	Tense end in	ns.
		Pret.			tus, sus, xus
		Fut.			rus, dus.

II. *The Signification of Participles is either Active or Passive, or Neuter, after the Manner of the Verbs from which they come.*

Participia { in *ns* & *ras* plerumque sunt *Activa*.
 in *das* semper *Passiva*.
 in *tus, sus, xus*, plerumque sunt *Passiva*, interdum verò *Activa*, vel etiam *Communia*.

III. Omnia Participia sunt Adjectiva : quæ desinunt in *ns* sunt *Tertiæ Declinationis*, reliqua autem omnia *Primæ & Secundæ*.

Participles { in *ns* and *ras* are generally *Active*.
 in *das* always *Passive*.
 in *tus, sus, xus*, are generally *Passive*, sometimes *Active*, or also *Common*.

III. All Participles are Adjectives : These which end in *ns*, are of the Third Declension, but all the rest are of the First and Second.

A PARTICIPLE is a kind of Adjective formed from a Verb, which in its Signification always imports some Time.

It is so called, because it *partakes* of a Noun and a Verb, having Genders and Cases from the one, Time and Signification from the other, and Number from both.

1. ACTIVE Verbs [See Chap. IX.] have two Participles, one of the Present Time ending in *ns* ; as, *Amans*, Loving : And another of the Future ending in *rus* ; as, *Amaturus*, About to love.

2. PASSIVE Verbs have likewise two Participles, one of the Preterite ending in *tus, sus*, or *xus* ; as *Amatus*, Loved ; *Visus*, Seen ; *Flexus*, Bowed ; (to which add one in *uus*, viz. *Mortuus* Dead :) And another of the Future ending in *das* ; as, *Amandus*, To be loved.

3. NEUTER Verbs have two Participles, as the Active ; as *Sedens*, Sitting ; *Sessurus*, About to sit.

4. Active INTRANSITIVE Verbs have frequently three Participles, as, *Carens*, Wanting ; *Cariturus*, About to want ; *Carendus*, To be wanted ; *Dolens*, Grieving ; *Doliturus*, About to grieve ; *Dolendus*, To be grieved : And sometimes four ; as *Vigilans*, Watching ; *Vigilaturus*, About to watch ; *Vigilatus*, Watched ; *Vigilandus*, to be watched.

5. DEPONENT and COMMON Verbs have generally four Participles ; as, *Loquens*, Speaking ; *Locuturus*, About to speak ; *Locutus*, Having spoken ; *Loquendus*, To be spoken ; *Dignans*, Vouchsafing ; *Dignaturus*, About to vouchsafe ; *Dignatus*, Having vouchsafed, or being vouchsafed ; *Dignandus*, To be vouchsafed.

NOTE, 1. That in some Deponent Verbs the Participle Perfect hath both an Active and Passive Signification, tho' that of the Verb itself is only Active ; as, *Testatus*, Having testified, or being testified. So *Mentitus*, *Meditatus*, *Oblitus*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That it is essential to a Participle, I. That it come immediately from a Verb. II. That in its Signification it also include Time. Therefore *Tunicatus*, Coated ; *Larvatus*, Masked ; and such like, are not Participles, because they come from Nouns, and not from Verbs. And, *Ignarus*, Ignorant ; *Elegans*, Neat ; *Circumspectus*, Circumspect ; *Tacitus*, Silent ; *Falsus*, False ; *Profusus*, Prodigal, &c. are not Participles, because they do not signify Time.

There are a kind of Adjective Nouns ending in UNDUS, which approach very near to the Nature of Participles, such as, *Errabundus*, *Ludibundus*, *Populabundus*. They are formed from the Imperf. of the Indic. and their Signification is much the same with the Participle of the Present Time: only they signify *Abundance*, or a great deal of the Action, according to *A. Gellius*, lib. 11. cap. 15. or, according to others, they signify the same with the Participles of Frequentative Verbs, when these are not in use. See *Gronovius* on *Gellius*, as above cited.

APPENDIX of Gerunds and Supines.

GERUNDS and SUPINES (which, because of their near Relation to Verbs, are by some not improperly called *Participial Words*) are a Sort of *Substantive Nouns* expressing the Action of the Verb in general, or in the Abstract. GERUNDS are *Substantives* of the second Declension, and complete in all their Cases, except the *Vocative*. SUPINES are *Substantives* of the fourth Declension, having only two Cases, the *Accusative* in UM, which makes the *First Supine*, and the *Ablative* in U, which makes the *Second*.

[*Vossius*, Lib. 8. Cap. 54. thinks that the Last Supine may sometimes be a Dative; as, *Durum tactu*, i. e. *tactui*; for the Datives of the fourth Declension of old ended in u. Also Lib. 7. Cap. 8. he takes Notice, that tho' these Supines have sometimes other Cases, (as, *irrisui esse*) yet they are only reckoned Supines by Grammarians, when the First come after Verbs of Motion, and the Second, after Adjective Nouns: Thus, *dignus irrisu* is a Supine (according to them) *Non sine irrisu audientium*; is not.]

De Indeclinabilibus Partibus Orationis.

C A P. V.

De Adverbio.

IN ADVERBIO potissimum spectanda est ejus Significatio.

Adverbiorum Significationes variae sunt: earum verò præcipuæ ad sequentia capita revocari possunt.

Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.

C H A P. V.

Of Adverb.

IN an Adverb is chiefly to be considered its Signification.

The Significations of Adverbs are various: But the chief of them may be reduced to the following Heads.

ADVERB is an indeclinable Part of Speech, which being joined to a Noun, Verb, or other Adverb, expresses some Circumstance, Quality, or Manner of their Signification.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE, are chiefly those of Place, Time, and Order.

1. Adverbs of PLACE are fivefold,
viz. Adverbs signifying Motion,

(or Rest) (1) in a Place.	UBI?	Where?
	Hic,	Here.
	Illic,	} There.
	Isthic,	
	Ibi,	
	Intus,	Within.
	Foris,	Without.
	Ubique,	Every where.
	Nusquam,	No where.
	Alicubi,	Some where.
(2) to a Place.	Alibi,	Else where.
	Ubivis,	Any where.
	Ibidem,	In the same Place.
	Quo?	Whither?
	Huc,	Hither.
	Illuc,	} Thither.
	Isthuc,	
	Intro,	
	Foras,	To within.
	Eo,	To without.
(3) towards a Place.	Alio,	To that Place.
	Aliquo,	To another Place.
	Eodem,	To some Place.
	Quorsum?	To the same Place.
	Verfus,	Whitherward?
	Horsum,	Towards.
	Ilorsum,	Hitherward.
	Sursum,	Thitherward.
	Deorsum,	Upward.
	Antrorsum,	Downward.
(4) from a Place.	Retrorsum,	Forward.
	Dextrorsum,	Backward.
	Sinistrorsum,	To the right Hand.
	UNDE?	To the left Hand.
	Hinc,	From whence?
	Illinc,	From hence.
	Isthinc,	} From thence.
	Inde,	
	Aliunde,	
	Alicunde,	From else where.
(5) through or by a Place.	Sicunde,	From some Place.
	Utrique,	From any Place.
	Superne,	From both Sides.
	Inferne,	From above.
	Cœlitus,	From below.
	Funditus,	From Heaven.
	QUA?	From the Ground.
	Hac,	Which Way?
	Illac,	This Way.
	Isthac,	} That Way.
	Alia,	
		Another Way.

2. Adverbs of TIME are threefold,
viz. such as signify,

1. Pre. sent.	(1) Being in Time, either	
	NUNC,	Now.
	Hodie,	To-day.
	TUNC,	} Then.
	Tum,	
	Heri,	Yesterday.
	Dudum,	} Heretofore.
	Pridem,	
	Pridie,	The Day before.
	Nudius tertius,	Three Days ago.
2. Past.	Nuper,	Latently.
	JAMJAM,	Presently.
	Mox,	Immediately.
	Statim,	By and by.
	Protinus,	Instantly.
	Illico,	Straightway.
	CRAS,	To-morrow.
	Postridie,	The Day after.
	Perendie,	Two Days hence.
	Nondum,	Not yet.
3. Future, remote; very near.	QUANDO?	When?
	Aliquando,	} Sometimes.
	Nonnunquam,	
	Interdum,	
	Semper,	Ever.
	Nunquam,	Never.
	Interim,	In the mean time.
	Quotidie,	Daily.
	(2) Continuance of Time.	
	DIU,	Long.
4. Indefinite.	Quamdiu?	How long?
	Tamdiu,	So long.
	Jamdiu,	} Long ago.
	Jamduum,	
	Jampridem,	
	(3) Vicissitude or Repetition of Time.	
	QUOTIES?	How often?
	Sæpe,	Often.
	Raro,	Seldom.
	Toties,	So often.
1. Indefinite.	Aliquoties,	For several times.
	Vicissim,	} By Turns.
	Alternatim,	
	Rursus,	} Again.
	Iterum,	
	Subinde,	} Ever and anon.
	Identidem.	
	2. Definite, or in Number.	
	SEMEL,	Once.
	Bis,	Twice.
	Ter,	Thrice.
	Quater,	Four times, &c.

Inde
Dein
Dehinc
Porro
I
eith

ABSOLUTE, denoting,

RELATIVE, denoting,

3. Adverbs of ORDER; as,

Inde, Then.	Deinceps, So forth.	Primò, -um, First.
Deinde, Thereafter.	Denuo, Of-new.	Secundò, -um, Secondly.
Dehinc, Henceforth.	Denique, Finally.	Tertiò, -um, Thirdly.
Porro, Moreover.	Postremò, Lastly.	Quartò, -um, Fourthly.

II. The other Adverbs expressing QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either Absolute or Comparative.

ABSOLUTE, denoting,

1. QUALITY simply; as, Bene, well; malè, ill; fortiter, bravely: And innumerable others that come from Adjective Nouns or Participles.
2. CERTAINTY; as, Profectò, certè, sanè, planè, nã, utique, ita, etiam, truly, verily, yes; quidni, why not? omnino, certainly.
3. CONTINGENCE; as, Fortè, forsan, fortassis, fors, happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.
4. NEGATION; as, Non, haud, not; nequaquam, not at all; neutiquam, by no means; minimè, nothing less.
5. PROHIBITION; as, Ne, not.
6. SWEARING; as, Hercle, pol, edepol, mecastor, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.
7. EXPLAINING; as, Utpote, videlicet, scilicet, nimirum, nempe, to wit, namely.
8. SEPARATION; as, Scorsum, apart; separatim, separately; sigillatim, one by one; viritim, Man by Man; oppidatim, Town by Town, &c.
9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, Simul, unà, pariter, together; generaliter, generally; universaliter, universally; plerumque, for the most part.
10. INDICATION or POINTING out; as, En, ecce, lo, behold.
11. INTERROGATION; as, Cur, quare, quamobrem, why, wherefore? num, an, whether? quomodo, qui, how? To which add, Ubi, quò, quorsum, unde, quà, quando, quamdiu, quoties.

COMPARATIVE, denoting,

1. EXCESS; as, Valde, maximè, magnopere, summo opere, admodum, oppidò, perquam, longè, very much, exceedingly; nimis, nimium, too much; prorsus, penitus, omnino, altogether, wholly; magis, more; melius, better; pejùs, worse; fortius, more bravely: And optimè, best; pessimè, worst; fortissimè, most bravely; and innumerable others of the Comparative and Superlative Degrees.
2. DEFECT; as, Ferme, ferè, prope, propemodum, penè, almost; parum, little; paullo, paullulum, very little.
3. PREFERENCE; as, Potius, satius, rather; potissimum, precipuè, præsertim, chiefly, especially; imò, yes, nay, nay rather.
4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, Ita, sic, adeo, so; ut, uti, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quasi, as, as if; quemadmodum, even as; satis, enough; itidem, in like Manner.
5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; as, Aliter, secus, otherwise; alioqui or alioquin, else; nedum, much more or much less.
6. ABATEMENT; as, Sensim, paullatim, pedetentim, by degrees, piece-meal; vix, scarcely; ægre, hardly, with difficulty.
7. EXCLUSION; as, Tantum, solum, modò, tantummodo, duntaxat, demum, only.

NOTE, 1. That ADVERBS seem originally to have been contrived to express compendiously in one Word what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *Sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *una vice*; *bis*, for *duobus vicibus*; *Hercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c. Therefore many of them are nothing else but *Adjective Nouns* or *Pronouns*, having the *Preposition* and *Substantive* understood; as, *quò, eò, eòdem*; for *ad quæ, ea, eadem* [loca], or *cũ, ei, eidem*, [loco]; for of old these *Datives* ended in *o*. Thus, *qua, hac, illac*, &c. are plain *Adjectives* in the *Abl. sing. femin.* the Word *viâ*, a Way, and *in*, being understood, Many of them are *Compounds*; as, *quomodo*, i. e. *quo modo*; *quemadmodum*, i. e. *ad quem modum*; *quomobrem*, i. e. *ob quam rem*; *quare*, i. e. [pro] *qua re*; *quorsum*, i. e. *versus quem* [locum]; *scilicet*, i. e. *scire licet*; *videlicet*, i. e. *videre licet*; *ilicet*, i. e. *ire licet*; *illico*, i. e. *in loco*; *magnopere*, i. e. *magno opere*; *nimirum*, i. e. *ni [est] mirum*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That of *Adverbs of Place*, these of the First Kind answer to the Question *ubi*; the Second to *quo*? the Third to *quorsum*? the Fourth to *unde*? and the Fifth to *qua*? To which might be added a Sixth, *quousque*, How far? answered by *Usque*, until; *Hucusque*, Hitherto; *Eousque*, so far; *Hactenus*, hitherto, thus far; *Eatenus*, so far as; *Quadantenus*, in some Measure. But these are equally applied to *Place* and *Time*.

NOTE, 3. That *Adverbs of Time* of the First Kind answer to *quando*? of the Second to *quamdiu* and *quamdudum* or *quampridem*? of the Third to *quoties*?

NOTE, 4. That *Adverbs of Quality* generally answer to the Question *quomodo*?

NOTE, 5. That some *Adverbs of Time, Place, and Order*, are frequently used the one for the other; as, *Ubi*, where and when; *inde*, from that Place, from that Time, thereafter, next; *hactenus*, thus far, with respect to Place, Time or Order, &c. Other *Adverbs* also may be classed under different Heads.

NOTE, 6. That some *Adverbs of Time* are either *past, present* or *future*; as, *Jam*, already, now, by and by; *Olim*, long ago, some time hereafter.

NOTE, 7. That *Interrogative Adverbs of Time and Place*, doubled or with the Adjection *cunque*, answer to the English Adjection *soever*; as, *ubiubi*, or *ubicunque*, wheresoever; *quoquo*, or *quocunque*, whithersoever, &c. And the same holds also in other *Interrogative Words*; as, *quisquis*, or *quicunque*, whosoever; *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever; *quantusquantus*, or *quantuscunque*, how great soever; *qualisqualis*, or *qualiscunque*, of what Kind or Quality soever; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however, or howsoever, &c.

C A P. VI.

De Præpositione.

I. P Ræpositiones quæ regunt Accusativum sunt viginti octo, viz.

Ad,	To.
Apud,	At.
Ante,	Before.

C H A P. VI.

Of Preposition.

T H E Prepositions which govern the Accusative are twenty-eight, viz.

Adversus,	} Against.
Adversum,	
Contra,	

Part II. Chap. VI. of Preposition. 67

Cis,	{ On this Side.	Propter,	For, hard by.
Citra,		Per,	By, through.
Circa,	{ About.	Præter,	Besides, except.
Circum,		Penes,	In the Power of.
Erga,	Towards.	Post,	After.
Extra,	Without.	Pone,	Behind.
Inter,	Between, among.	Secus,	By, along.
Intra,	Within.	Secundum,	According to.
Infra,	Beneath.	Supra,	Above.
Juxta,	Nigh to.	Trans,	On the farther Side.
Ob,	For.	Ultra,	Beyond.

II. Præpositiones quæ regunt Ablativum sunt quindecim, nempe,

A,	{ From.	
Ab,		
Abs,		
Absque,	Without.	
Cum,	With.	
Clam,	Without the Knowledge of.	
Coram,	Before.	

II. The Prepositions which govern the Ablative are Fifteen, viz.

De,	Of, concerning.
E,	{ Of, out of.
Ex,	
Pro,	For.
Præ,	Before.
Palam,	With the Knowledge of.
Sine,	Without.
Tenus,	Up to.

III. Hæ quatuor interdum Accusativum, interdum Ablativum regunt.

In,	In, into.
Sub,	Under.

III. These four govern sometimes the Accusative, and sometimes the Ablative.

Super,	Above.
Subter,	Beneath.

A PREPOSITION is an indeclinable Word, shewing the Relation of one Substantive Noun to another.

NOTE, That *Pone* and *Secus* rarely occur: And *Prope*, nigh; *Usque*, unto; *Circiter*, about; *Versus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned among the *Prepositions* governing the *Accusative*; and *Procul*, far, among those governing the *Ablative*, are *Adverbs*; and do not govern a Case of themselves, but by the Preposition *ad*, which is understood to the first four, and *a* or *ab* to the last. To which perhaps may be added *Clam*, which is joined very frequently with the *Accusative*; as, *Clam patre*, or *patrem*; *a* being understood to the one, and *quod ad* to the other.

Besides the separate Use of these PREPOSITIONS, there is another Use arises from them, namely, their being put before a vast Number of Nouns and Verbs in *Composition*, which creates a great Variety, and gives a peculiar Elegance and Beauty to the *Latin Tongue*.

68 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

There are five or six Syllables, viz. AM, DI or DIS, RE, SE, CON, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in *compound Words*: However they generally add something to the Signification of the Words with which they are compounded; thus:

AM,	}	signifies	{	round about,	}	as,	ambio, to surround.
Di,				asunder,			divello, to pull asunder.
Dis,				again,			distraho, to draw asunder.
Re,				aside or apart,			relego, to read again.
Se,				together,			sepono, to lay aside.
Con,							concreresco, to grow together.

CHAP. VII.

Of Interjection.

AN INTERJECTION is an indeclinable Word thrown into Discourse, to signify some Passion or Emotion of the Mind.

- Some of them express,
1. JOY; as, Evax, hey, brave, io.
 2. GRIEF; as Ah, hei, heu, cheu, ah, alas, woes me.
 3. WONDER; as Papæ, O strange; Vah, hab.
 4. PRAISE; as, Euge, well done.
 5. AVERSION; as, Apage, away, begone, fy, tush.
 6. EXCLAIMING; as, Oh, proh, O.
 7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, Atat, ha, aba.
 8. IMPRECATION; as, Væ, wo, pox on't.
 9. LAUGHTER; as, Ha, ha, he.
 10. SILENCING; as, Au, 'st, pax, silence, hush, 'st.
 11. CALLING; as, Eho, io, ho, so, ho, sêbe, O.
 12. DERISION; as, Hui, away with.
 13. ATTENTION; as, Hem, hab.

NOTE, 1. That the same *Interjection* denotes sometimes one Passion and sometimes another; as, *Vah*, which is used to express Joy, and Sorrow, and Wonder, &c.

NOTE, 2. That some of them are *natural Sounds* common to all Languages.

NOTE, 3. That *Nouns* are used sometimes for *Interjections*; as, *Malum!* With a Pox! With a Mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! *Fy, fy!* *Miserum!* O wretched! *Nefas,* O the Villany!

INTERJECTION is a compendious Way of expressing a whole Sentence in one Word, and used only to represent the Passions and Emotions of the Soul, that the Shortness of the one might the sooner express the Suddenness and Quickness of the other.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Conjunction.

A CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable Word that joins Sentences together; and thereby shews their Dependence upon one another.

Part II. Chap. VIII. of Conjunction. 69

Of these some are called,

1. **COPULATIVE**; as, Et, ac, atque, que, and; etiam, quoque, item, also; cum, tum, both, and. Also their Contraries, Nec, neque, neu, neve, neither, nor.
2. **DISJUNCTIVE**; as, Aut, ve, vel, seu, sive, either, or.
3. **CONCESSIVE**; as, Et si, etiam si, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis, tho', altho', albeit.
4. **ADVERSATIVE**; as, Sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui, but; tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verum enim vero, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.
5. **CAUSAL**; as, Nam, namque, enim, for; quia, quippe, quoniam, because; quod, that, because.
6. **ILLATIVE or RATIONAL**; as, Ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, therefore; quapropter, quocirca, wherefore; proinde, therefore; cum, quum, seeing, since; quandoquidem, forasmuch as.
7. **FINAL or PERFECTIVE**; as, Ut, uti, that, to the end that.
8. **CONDITIONAL**; as, Si, sin, if; dum, modo, dummodo, provided, upon Condition that, siquidem, if indeed.
9. **EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE**; as, Ni, nisi, unless, except.
10. **DIMINUTIVE**; as Saltem, certè, at least.
11. **SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE**; as, An, anne, num, whether; ne, annon, whether, not; necne, or not.
12. **EXPLETIVE**; as, Autem, vero, now, truly; quidem, equidem, indeed.
13. **ORDINATIVE**; as, Deinde, thereafter; denique, finally; insuper, moreover; cæterum, moreover, but, however.
14. **DECLARATIVE**; as, Videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c. to wit, namely.

NOTE, 1. That the same Words, as they are taken in different Views, are both *Adverbs* and *Conjunctions*; as, An, anne, &c. are *Suspensive Conjunctions* and *Interrogative Adverbs*. The same may be said of the *Ordinative* and *Declarative Conjunctions*, which under another View may be ranked under *Adverbs* of *Order* and *Explaining*. So likewise *Utinam*, which is commonly called an *Adverb* of *Wishing*, when more narrowly considered, is nothing else but the *Conjunction Uti* [that] with the Syllable *nam* added to it, and *opto*, [I wish] understood; as, *Utinam adfuisses*; *Ut te Deus male perdat*; supple *Opto*. But since both of them are indeclinable; there is no great Need of being very nice in distinguishing them.

NOTE, 2. That other Parts of Speech compounded together, supply the Place of *Conjunctions*; as, *Postea*, afterwards; *præterea*, moreover; *propterea*, because, &c. Which are made up of the Prepositions *post*, *præter*, and *propter*, with *ea* the Pronoun.

NOTE, 3. That some *Conjunctions*, according to their natural ORDER, stand first in a Sentence; as, *Et*, *aut*, *nec*, *si*, &c. Some, contrary to their natural Order, stand in the second Place, viz. *autem*, *vero*, *quoque*, *quidem*, *enim*: And some may indifferently be put either first or second, viz. *Namque*, *etenim*, *siquidem*, *ergo*, *igitur*, *itaque*, &c. Hence arose the Division of them into *Prepositive*, *Subjunctive* and *Common*.

¶ C H A P. IX.

A P P E N D I X, containing some Observations concerning the various Divisions and Significations of Words, especially *Noun* and *Verb*.

1. **A**LL Words whatsoever are either *Simple* or *Compound*. A **SIMPLE** Word [*simplex*] is that which was never more than one; as, *Iustus, lego*. A **COMPOUND** [*Compositum*] is that which is made up of two or more Words, or of a Word and some Syllabical Adjection; as, *Injustus, perlego, derelinquo, egomet*.

2. All Words whatsoever are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*. A **PRIMITIVE** Word [*Primitivum*] is that which comes from no other Word; as, *Iustus, lego*. A **DERIVATIVE** [*Derivativum*] is that which comes from another Word; as, *Iustitia, lectio*.

I. Besides the more general Divisions of *Nouns* and *Pronouns*, mentioned p. 5. and 22, there are other particular Divisions of them taken from their various Significations and Derivations: The most remarkable whereof are these:

I. With respect to Signification.

1. A **COLLECTIVE** [*Collectivum*] is a Substantive Noun which signifies many in the singular Number; as, *Populus, a People; exercitus, an Army*.

2. An **INTERROGATIVE** Noun or Pronoun [*Interrogativum*] is that by which we ask a Question; as, *Quis? Who? Uter? Which of the two? Qualis? Of what Kind? Quantus? How great? Quot? How many? And these, when they are used without a Question, are called INDEFINITES.*

3. A **RELATIVE** Noun or Pronoun [*Relativum*] is an Adjective that has respect to something spoken before; as, *Qui, ille, ipse, &c. Alius, alter, reliquus, cetera, -um, qualis, quantus, &c.*

4. A **PARTITIVE** Noun or Pronoun [*Partitivum*] is an Adjective which signifies many severally, and as it were one by one; as, *Omnis, nullus, quisque, &c. or a Part of many; as, Quidam, aliquis, neuter, nemo, &c.*

5. A **NUMERAL** Noun [*Numerale*] is an Adjective which signifies Number, (of which there are four principal Kinds:)

(1) **CARDINAL**, [*Numerus Cardinalis*]; as, *Unus, duo, tres, &c.*

(2) **ORDINAL**, [*Ordinalis*]; as, *Primus, secundus, tertius, &c.*

(3) **DISTRIBUTIVE**, [*Distributivus*]; as, *Singuli, bini, terni, &c.*

(4) **MULTIPLICATIVE**, [*Multiplicativus*]; as, *Simplex, duplex, triplex, &c.*

II. With respect to Signification and Derivation.

1. A **PATRONYMICK** Noun [*Patronymicum*] is a Substantive Noun derived from another Substantive proper, signifying one's Pedigree or Extraction; as, *Priamides, the Son of Priamus; Priamis, the Daughter of Priamus; Æetias, the Daughter of Æetes; Nerine, the Daughter of Nereus*. *Patronymicks* are generally derived from the Name of the Father, but the Poets (for others seldom use them) derive them also from the Grandfather, or some other remarkable Person of the Family; nay, sometimes from the Founder of a Nation or People, and also from Countries and Cities; as, *Æacides, the Son, Grandson, Great-grandson, or one of the Posterity of Æacus; Romulida, the Romans, from their first King Romu-*

Part II. Chap. IX. Appendix, &c. 71

lus; *Sicelis*, *Troas*, a Woman of Sicily, of Troy. &c. *Patronymicks* of Men end in *des*; of Women in *is*, *as*, and *ne*. These in *des* and *ne* are of the First, and these in *is* and *as* of the Third Declension.

2. An **ABSTRACT Noun** [*Abstractum*] is a Substantive derived from an Adjective expressing the Quality of that Adjective in general, without regard to the thing in which the Quality is; as, *Bonitas*, Goodness; *Dulcedo*, Sweetness; from *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. With respect to these Abstracts, the Adjectives from which they come are called **CONCRETES**, because, besides the Quality, they also confusedly signify something as the Subject of it, without which they cannot make Sense.

3. A **GENTILE** or **PATRIAL Noun** [*Gentile* or *Patrium*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive proper, signifying one's Country; as, *Scotus*, *Macedo*, *Arpinas*, *Edinburgensis*, *Taodunanus*; a Man born in Scotland, Macedonia, Arpinum, Edinburgh, Dundee; from *Scotia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*, *Edinburgum*, *Taodunum*.

4. A **POSSESSIVE Noun** [*Possessivum*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive, whether Proper or Appellative, signifying Possession or Property; as, *Scoticus*, *Herculeus*, *Paternus*, *Herilis*, *Femineus*, of or belonging to Scotland, Hercules, a Father, a Master, a Woman; from *Scotia*, *Hercules*, *Pater*, *Herus*, *Femina*.

5. A **DIMINUTIVE Noun** [*Diminutivum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Substantive or Adjective respectively, importing a Diminution or Lessening of its Signification; as, *Libellus*, a little Book; *Chartula*, a little Paper; *Opusculum*, a little Work; from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*; *Parvulus*, very little; *Candidulus*, pretty white; from *parvus*, *candidus*. These for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the same Gender with their Primitives.

6. A **DENOMINATIVE Noun** [*Denominativum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Noun; as, *Gratia*, Favour; *Vinea*, a Vineyard; *Senator*, a Senator; from *Gratus*, *vinum*, *senex*: *Cælestis*, heavenly; *Humanus*, humane; *Aureus*, golden; from *cælum*, *homo*, *aurum*.

7. A **VERBAL NOUN** [*Verbale*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from a Verb; as, *Amor*, Love; *Doctrina*, Learning; *Lectio*, a Lesson; *Auditus*, Hearing; from *Amo*, *doceo*, *lego*, *audio*; *Amabilis*, lovely; *Capax*, capable; *Volucer*, swift; from *Amo*, *capio*, *volo*.

8. Lastly, There are some Nouns derived from *Participles*, *Adverbs*, and *Prepositions*; as, *Fictitius*, counterfeit; *Craftinus*, belonging to the Morrow; *Contrarius*, contrary; from *Fictus*, *cras*, *contra*.

NOTE, That the same Nouns, according to the different Respects in which they are considered, may sometimes be ranked under one, and sometimes under another of the above mentioned Classes; as, *Quis* is an *Interrogative*, *Relative* or *Partitive*; *Pietas*, an *Abstract* or *Denominative*.

II. *Pronouns* are divided into four Classes, viz.

1. **DEMONSTRATIVES**, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*.

2. **RELATIVES**, *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*.

3. **POSSESSIVES**, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noſter*, *veſter*.

4. **PATRIALS** or **GENTILES**. *Noſtras*, *veſtras*, *cujas*.

Of them alſo two are **INTERROGATIVES**, *Quis* and *cujas*.

III. 1. Verbs, with reſpect to their *Figure* or *Frame*, are either **SIMPLE**; as, *Amo*, I love: Or, **COMPOUND**, as, *Redamo*, I love again.

72 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

2. With respect to their *Species* or *Origin*, are either **PRIMITIVE**; as, *Lego*, I read; or **DERIVATIVE**; as, *Lectito*, I read frequently.

3. With respect to their *Conjugation*, are either **REGULAR**; as, *Amo*; or **IRREGULAR**; as, *Volo*, *vis*, &c.

4. With respect to their *Constituent Parts*, are either **COMPLETE**; as, *Amo*; or **DEFECTIVE**; as, *Inquam*; or **REDUNDANT**; as, *E-do*, *edis*, & *es*, &c.

5. With respect to their *Persons*, are either **PERSONAL**; as, *Amo*; or **IMPERSONAL**; as, *Pœnitet*.

6. With respect to their *Terminations*, they end either in **O**; as *Amo*; or in **R**; as, *Amor*; or in **M**; as, *Sum*.

7. With respect to their *Signification*, Verbs are either *Substantive* or *Adjective*.

(1.) A **SUBSTANTIVE** Verb [*Substantivum*] is that which signifies simply the Affirmation of Being or Existence; as, *Sum*, *fio*, *existo*, I am.

(2.) An **ADJECTIVE** Verb [*Adjectivum*] is that which, together with the Signification of Being, has a particular Signification of its own; as, *Amo*; i. e. *Sum amans*, I am loving.

An *Adjective* Verb is divided into *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*.

[1.] An **ACTIVE** Verb [*Activum*] is that which affirms Action of its Person or Nominative before it; as, *Amo*, *loquor*, *curro*.

[2.] A **PASSIVE** Verb [*Passivum*] is that which affirms Passion of its Person or Nominative before it; as, *Amor*.

[3.] A **NEUTER VERB**, [*Neutrum*] is that which affirms neither Action nor Passion of its Nominative; but simply signifies the State, Posture, or Quality of Things; as, *Sto*, *sedeo*, *maneo*, *duro*, *vireo*, *slaveo*, *sapio*, *quiesco*, &c. To stand, sit, stay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be wise, to rest.

An *Active* Verb is again divided into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*.

[1.] An **Active TRANSITIVE** Verb [*Transitivum*] is that whose Action passeth from the Agent to some other Thing; as, *Amo Patrem*.

[2.] An **Active INTRANSITIVE** Verb [*Intransitivum*] is that whose Action passeth not from the Agent to any other; as, *curro*, I run; *ambulo*, I walk.

When to any Verb you put the Question **WHOM?** or **WHAT?** if a rational Answer can be returned, the Verb is *Transitive*; as, *Whom* or *What* do you teach? Answ. *A Boy*, the Grammar: If not, it is *Intransitive*; as, *What* do you run, go, come, live, sleep, &c. to which no rational Answer can be given, unless it be by a Word of like Signification, which sometimes indeed these Verbs have after them; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam*, I live a pleasant Life; *Eo iter longum*, I go a long Journey.

NOTE, 1. That the same Verb is sometimes *Transitive*, and sometimes *Intransitive*; as, *Ver incipit*, the Spring begins, *Cic. Incipere facinus*, to begin an Action. *Plaut.*

NOTE, 2. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs are often Englished with the Signs of a *Passive* Verb; as, *Caleo*, I am hot; *Palleo*, I am pale; *Jacobus abiit*, James is gone.

NOTE, 3. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs want the *Passive* Voice, unless *impersonally* used, as the *Intransitive* Verbs most frequently and elegantly are; as, *pugnatur*, *itur*, *ventum est*.

Tho' all Verbs whatsoever, with respect to their Signification, belong to some one or other of the foregoing Classes, yet because Grammarians to-

gether with the Signification of Verbs, are obliged also to consider their Termination, and finding that all Active Verbs did not end in *o*, neither all Passives in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former, two or three other Classes or Kinds of them, viz. Deponent, Common, and Neuter-passive.

[1.] A DEPONENT Verb [*Deponens*] is that which has a Passive Termination, but an Active or Neuter Signification, as, *Loquor*, I speak; *Morior*, I die.

[2.] A COMMON Verb [*Commune*] is that which under a Passive Termination has a Signification either Active or Passive; as, *Criminor*, I accuse, or I am accused; *Dignor*, I think, or I am thought worthy.

[3.] A NEUTER-PASSIVE [*Neutra-passivum*] is that which is half Active and half Passive in its Termination, but in its Signification is either wholly Passive; as, *Fio*, *factus sum*, to be made. Or wholly Active or Neuter; as, *Audeo*, *ausus sum*, To dare; *Gaudeo*, *gavisus sum*, To rejoice.

8. To omit the other Kinds of Derivative Verbs, which are not very material, there are three Kinds of them derived from Verbs, which deserve to be remarked, viz. Frequentatives, Inceptives, and Desideratives.

[1.] FREQUENTATIVES [*Verba frequentativa*] signify Frequency of Action. They are formed from the last Supine, by changing *atu* into *ito* from Verbs of the first, and *u* into *o* from Verbs of the other three Conjugations. They are all of the first; as, *Clamito*, To cry frequently, from *clamo*; *Dormito*, To sleep often, from *dormio*. From them also are formed other Frequentatives: as, *curro*, *curso*, *kursito*; *jacio*, *jactito*; *pellō*, *pulso*, *pulsito*, and *pulto*.

[2.] INCEPTIVES [*Verba inceptiva*] signify, that a Thing is begun and tending to Perfection. They are formed from the second Person Sing. Pres. Ind. by adding *co*. They are all of the Third Conjugation, and want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Caleo*, *cales*, *calesco*, I grow or wax warm.

[3.] DESIDERATIVES [*Verba desiderativa*] signify a Desire of Action. They are formed from the last Supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the Fourth Conjugation, and generally want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Cœliaturo*, I desire to sup; *Efurio*, I am hungry, or I desire to eat.

9. Lastly, In Construction, Verbs receive Names from their more particular Significations; as, Vocative Verbs, or Verbs of naming, Verbs of remembering, of want, of teaching, of accusing, &c.

In the preceding Division of Verbs, with respect to their Signification, I have receded a little from the common Method; and in particular I have given a different Account of Neuter Verbs from that commonly received by Grammarians, who comprise under them all Intransitive Verbs, tho' their Significations be never so much Active. But this I did, partly from the Reason of the Name, which imports a Negation both of Action and Passion, and partly to give a distinct View of the Significations of Verbs, without regard to their Terminations, which in that respect are purely accidental and arbitrary.

I have also excluded from the Divisions of Verbs those called NEUTRAL-PASSIVES [*Lat. Neutra-passiva*] because originally they are Active Verbs; for the primary Signification of *vapulo* is *pereo* or *ploro*; of *exulo*, *extra solum eo*; of *veneo*, *venum eo*; of *nubo*, *velo*. *Liceo* indeed is a very singular Verb, for in the Active Voice it signifies passively, and in the Passive, actively.

74 *Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,*
 PARS TERTIA. PART THIRD.

*De Sententiis, five O- Of Sentences, or
 ratione. Speech.*

SENTENTIA est quævis animi cogitatio, duabus aut pluribus vocibus simul junctis enunciata; ut, *Tu legis; Tu legis libros; Tu legis libros bonos; Tu legis libros bonos domi (a).*

A SENTENCE is any Thought of the Mind expressed by two or more Words put together; as, *You read; You read Books; You read good Books; You read good Books at home.*

C A P. I.

De Syntaxi, five Constructione.

SYNTAXIS est recta vocum in Oratione Compositio.

Ejus partes sunt duæ, *Concordantia & Regimen (b).*

C H A P. I.

Of Syntar, or Construction.

SYNTAX is the right Ordering of Words in Speech.

Its Parts are two, Concord and Government.

(a) We are now arrived at the principal Part of *Grammar*; for the great End of Speech being to convey our Thoughts unto others, it will be of little Use to us to have a Stock of Words, and to know what Changes can be made upon them, unless we can also apply them to Practice, and make them answer the great Purposes for which they are intended. To the Attainment of this End there are two things absolutely necessary, viz. I. That in Speech we dispose and frame our Words according to the Laws and Rules established among those whose Language we speak. II. That in like Manner we know what is spoken and written, and be able to explain it in due Order, and resolve it into the several Parts of which it is made up. The first of these is called **Syntax** or **CONSTRUCTION**, and the second is named **EXPOSITION** or **RESOLUTION**. The first shews us how to speak the Language ourselves, and the second, how to understand it when spoken by others. But it must be owned, that there is such a necessary Connection between them, that he that is Master of the first cannot be ignorant of the second.

(b) NOTE, I. That the Difference between *Concord* and *Government* consists chiefly in this, that in *Concord* there can no Change be made in the *Accidents*, that is, *Gender, Case, Number* or *Person* of the one, but the like Change must also be made in the other: But in *Government*, the first Word (if declinable) may be changed, without any Change in the second. In *Concord*, the first Word may be called the *Word directing*

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 75.

Concordantia est quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibusdam accidentibus.

Regimen est quando dictio regit certum casum.

Concord is when one Word agrees with another in some Accidents.

Government is when a Word governs a certain Case.

I. De Concordantia.

Concordantia est quadruplex,

1. *Adjectivi cum Substantivo.*

2. *Verbi cum Nominativo.*

3. *Relativi cum Antecedente.*

4. *Substantivi, cum Substantivo.*

REGULA I.

Adjectivum concordat cum Substantivo in genere, numero & casu; ut,

a *Vir* b *bonus.*

a *Fœmina* b *casta.*

b *Dulce* a *pomum.*

I. Of Concord.

Concord is fourfold,

1. *Of an Adjective with a Substantive.*

2. *Of a Verb with a Nominative.*

3. *Of a Relative with an Antecedent.*

4. *Of a Substantive with a Substantive.*

RULE I.

An Adjective agrees with a Substantive in Gender, Number and Case; as,

A good Man.

A chaste Woman.

A sweet Apple.

K 2

and the second the *Word directed*: In *Government* the first is called the *Word governing*, and the second, the *Word governed*.

NOTE, 2. That for the greater Ease both of Master and Scholar, we have noted these Words wherein the Force of each Example lieth, with the Letters [a] and [b]; the Word *Directing* or *Governing* with [a], and the Word *Directed* or *Governed* with [b]; or where there are two Words *Directing* or *Governing*, the first with [a], and the second with [aa], and where two Words *Directed* or *Governed*, the first with [b] and the second with [bb].

Number 1. NOTE, 1. That the Way to find out the *Substantive* is to ask the Question WHO or WHAT? to the *Adjective*; for that which answers to it is the *Substantive*. And the same Question put to the *Verb* or *Relative*, discovers the *Nominative* or *Antecedent*.

NOTE, 2. That another *Adjective* sometimes supplies the Place of a *Substantive*; as, *Amicus certus*, A sure Friend; *Bona ferina*, Good Venison. *Homo* being understood to *Amicus*, and *Caro* to *Ferina*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Substantive* THING [*Negotium*] is most frequently understood; and then the *Adjective* is always put in the Neuter Gender, as if it were a *Substantive*; as, *Triste* [supple *Negotium*] i. e. *Res tristis*, A sad Thing. *Bona* [supple *Negotia*] i. e. *Res bone*, Good Things.

76 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

R E G. II.

2 **V**ERBUM concordat cum Nominativo ante se in numero & persona ; ut,

^a *Ego* ^b *lego*.

^a *Tu* ^b *scribis*.

^a *Præceptor* ^b *docet*.

A N N O T A T I O N E S.

3 1. VERBA Substantiva, Vocandi & Gestûs habent utrinque Nominativum ad eandem rem pertinentem ; ut,

^b *Ego* ^a *sum* ^{bb} *discipulus*.

^b *Tu* ^a *vocaris* ^{bb} *Joannes*.

^b *Ille* ^a *incedit* ^{bb} *Regina*.

4 2. ¶ EXCEP. Infinitivus Modus Accusativum ante se habet ; ut,

Gaudeo ^b *te* ^a *valere*.

R U L E II.

A Verb agrees with the Nominative before it in Number and Person ; as,

I read.

You write.

The Master teacheth.

1. Substantive Verbs, Verbs of Naming and Gesture have a Nominative both before and after them, belonging to the same thing ; as,

I am a Scholar.

You are named John.

She walks [as] a Queen.

2. ¶ EXCEP. The Infinitive Mood has an Accusative before it ; as,

I am glad that you are well.

Num. 2. NOTE, That the Infinitive Mood frequently supplies the Place of the Nominative ; as, *Mentiri non est meum*, To lie is not mine, [or my Property.]

Num. 3. 1. Substantive Verbs are *Sum*, *fio*, *forem*, and *existo*.

2. Verbs of Naming are these Passives, *Appellor*, *dicor*, *vocor*, *nominor*, *nuncupor*, to which add, *Videor*, *existimor*, *creor*, *constituor*, *salutor*, *designor*, &c.

3. Verbs of Gesture are, *Eo*, *incedo*, *venio*, *cubo*, *sto*, *sedeo*, *evado*, *fugio*, *dormio*, *somnio*, *maneo*, &c.

NOTE, That any Verb may have after it the Nominative, when it belongs to the same thing with the Nominative before it ; as, *Audivi hoc puer*, I heard it being [or when I was] a Boy. *Defendi rempublicam adolescens*, non *deseram senex*, I defended the Commonwealth [when I was] a young Man, I will not desert it [now that I am] old, *Cic*.

Num. 4. NOTE, That when the Particle THAT [in Lat. QUOD, or UT] comes between two Verbs, it is elegantly left out, by turning the Nominative Case into the Accusative, and the Verb into the Infinitive Mood ; as, *aiunt regem adventare*, They say [that] the King is coming ; rather than, *aiunt quod rex adventat*. *Turpe est eos qui bene nati sunt turpiter vivere*. 'Tis a shameful thing that they who are well born should live basely ; rather than, *Ut ii turpiter vivant*. See p. 43.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 77

3. ¶ ESSE habet eundem casum post se quem ante se ; ut,

b Petrus cupit a esse bb vir doctus.

Scio b Petrum a esse bb virum doctum.

b Mihi bb negligenti a esse non licet.

R E G. III.

* R ELATIVUM Qui, quæ, quod, concordat cum Antecedente in genere & numero ; ut,

a Vir sapit b qui pauca loquitur.

I. Si nullus interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit Verbo Nominativus ; ut,

3. ¶ ESSE hath the same Case after it that it hath before it ; as,

Peter desires to be a learned Man.

I know that Peter is a learned Man.

I am not allowed to be negligent.

R U L E III.

T HE Relative Qui, quæ, quod, agrees with the Antecedent in Gender and Number ; as,

He is a wise Man who speaks little.

I. If no Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be the Nominative to the Verb ; as,

Num. 5. NOTE, 1. That we frequently say, *Licet nobis esse bonos*, We may be good. *Tibi expedit esse sedulum*, 'Tis expedient for you to be diligent. *Nemini unquam nocuit fuisse pium*, It never hurted any Man that he hath been pious : But then the Accusative, *Nos*, *te*, *illum*, &c. is understood ; thus, *Licet nobis [nos] esse bonos*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That if *Esse*, and the other Infinitives of Substantive Verbs, Verbs of Naming, &c. have no Accusative or Dative before them, the Word that follows (whether Substantive or Adjective) is to be put in the Nominative ; as, *Dicitur esse vir*, He is said to be a Man. *Non videtur esse facturus*, He seems not about to do it. *Nemo debet dici beatus ante suum obitum*, No Man should be called happy before his Death.

Num. 6. NOTE, 1. That the Antecedent is a Substantive Noun that goes before the Relative, and is again understood to the Relative. Wherefore it will not be amiss to teach the Scholar to supply it every where ; thus ; *Beware of Idleness which [Idleness] is an Enemy to Virtue*, *Cave segnitiam, quæ [segnities] est inimica virtuti*. Nay Cicero himself, but especially Cæsar, frequently repeat the Substantive ; as, *In oppidum perfugisti, quo in oppido*, &c. You fled to a Town. in which Town, *Cic. Diem dicunt, quo die ad ripam Rhodani convenient*, They appoint a Day, on which Day they should meet upon the Bank of the River Rhosne, *Cæs.*

NOTE, 2. That when the Relative respects a whole Sentence, it is put in the Neuter Gender ; as, *Joannes mortuus est, quod mihi summo dolori est*, John is dead, which is a great Grief to me.

NOTE, 3. That the Person of the Relative is always the same with that of its Antecedent ; as, *Ego qui doceo*, I who teach. *Tu qui discis*, You who learn. *Lectio quæ docetur*, The Lesson which is taught.

78 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Præceptor a qui b docet.

The Master who teacheth.

8 2. At si interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit ejus casus quem Verbum aut Nomen sequens, vel Præpositio præcedens regere solent; ut,

Deus b quem a colimus.

b Cujus a munere vivimus.

b Cui nullus est a similis.

a Ab quo facta sunt omnia.

2. But if a Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be of that Case, which the Verb or Noun following, or the Preposition going before use to govern; as, God whom we worship.

By whose Gift we live.

To whom there is none like.

By whom all things were made.

A N N O T A T I O.

9 ¶ Duo vel plura Substantiva singularia, Conjunctione [*&, ac, atque, &c.*] copulata habent Adjectivum, Verbum, vel Relativum plurale; ut,

a Petrus & aa Joannes b qui

b sunt b docti.

¶ Two or more Substantives singular, coupled together with a Conjunction [*&, ac, atque, &c.*] have a Verb, Adjective, or Relative plural; as,

Peter and John who are learned.

Num. 9. NOTE, 1. That when the Substantives are of different Genders, the Adjective or Relative plural must agree with the Masculine rather than the Feminine or Neuter; as, *Pater & mater qui sunt mortui*, The Father and Mother who are dead.

EXCEP. But if the Substantives signify things without Life, the Adjective or Relative Plural, must be put in the Neuter Gender; as *Divitiæ, decus, gloria in oculis sita sunt*, Riches, Honour and Glory are set before your Eyes.

NOTE, 2. That when two or more Nominatives are of different Persons, the Verb plural must agree with the First Person rather than the Second; and the Second rather than the Third; as, *Si tu & Tullia valetis, ego & Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.

NOTE, 3. That the Adjective or Verb frequently agree with the Substantive or Nominative that is nearest them, and are understood to the rest; as, *Et ego in culpa sum & tu*, Both I and you are in the Fault: Or, *Et ego & tu es in culpa. Nihil hic deest nisi carmina*, There is nothing here wanting but Charms; *Nihil hic nisi carmina defunt*. This Manner of Construction is most usual, when the different Words signify one and the same thing, or much to the same Purpose; as, *Mens, ratio, & consilium in senibus est*, Understanding, Reason and Prudence is in old Men.

NOTE, 4. That Collective Nouns, because they are equivalent to a Plural Number, have sometimes the Adjective or Verb in the Plural Number; as, *Pars virgis casti*. A Part of them were scourged. *Turbæ rursus*, The Crowd rush.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 79

R E G. IV.

UNUM Substantivum concordat cum alio eandem rem significante in casu ; ut,
a Cicero b Orator.
a Urbs b Edinburgum.
a Filius b deliciae matris suae (a)

R U L E IV.

ONE Substantive agrees with another, signifying the same thing in Case ; as,
Cicero the Orator.
The City Edinburgh.
A Son the Darling of his Mother.

II. De Regimine.

REGIME Nest triplex,
 1. *Nominum.*
 2. *Verborum.*
 3. *Vocum indeclinabilium.*

II. Of Government.

GOVERNMENT is threefold,
 1. Of Nouns.
 2. Of Verbs.
 3. Of Words indeclinable.

I. REGIMEN *Nominum.*
 § 1. *Substantivorum.*
 R E G. I.

UNUM Substantivum regit aliud rem diversam significans in Genitivo ; ut,
a Amor b Dei.
a Lex b Naturae.

I. The Government of Nouns.
 § 1. Of Substantives.
 R U L E I.

ONE Substantive governs another signifying a different Thing in the Genitive ; as,
The Love of God.
The Law of Nature.

A N N O T A T I O N E S.

* I. Si posterius Substantivum adjunctum habeat Adje-

I. If the last Substantive have an Adjective of Praise

(a) To these four Concords some add a Fifth, viz. That of the Responsive agreeing with its Interrogative in Case ; as, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam ? Pater.* Who gave you Money ? My Father. *Quo cares ? Libro.* What do you want ? A Book. But this ought not to be made a principal Rule ; for the Responsive, or the Word that answers the Question, does not depend upon the Interrogative, but upon the Verb, or some other Word joined with it ; which, because spoken immediately before, is generally understood in the Answer ; thus, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam ? Pater* [dedit mihi pecuniam.] *Quo cares ?* [Careo] *Libro.*

Num. II. NOTE, 1. That OF or 's is the ordinary Sign of this Genitive.
 NOTE, 2. That the Relative Pronouns, *Ejus, illius, cujus, &c.* Engliſhed, *His, her, its, their, thereof, whereof, whose,* have their Substantives generally understood ; as, *Liber ejus,* [supple *Hominis, Fæminæ, &c.*] *His Book or her Book, Libricorum,* [supple *Hominum, Fæminarum, &c.*] *Their Books,*

80 Rudiments, of the Latin Tongue,

etivum laudis vel vituperii, or Dispraise joined with it, it
in Genitivo vel Ablativo po- may be put in the Genitive or
ni potest ; ut, Ablative ; as,

a Vir b summa b prudentia,

A Man of great Wisdom.

vel b summa b prudentia,

a Puer b proba b indolis,

A Boy of a good Disposition.

vel b proba b indole.

13 * 2. Adjectivum in Neu-
tro genere absque Substanti-
vo regit Genitivum ; ut,

a Multum b pecunia.

a Quid b rei ?

2. An Adjective in the Neu-
ter Gender without a Substan-
tive governs the Genitive ; as,
Much Money.

What is the Matter ?

§ 2. Adjectivorum.

R E G. - I.

14 * A DJECTIVA ver-
balia vel affectionem
animi significantia Geniti-
vum postulant ; ut,

a Avidus b gloria.

a Ignarus b fraudis.

a Memor b beneficiorum.

§ 2. Of Adjectives.

R U L E I.

V E R B A L Adjectives, or
such as signify an Affec-
tion of the Mind require the Ge-
nitive ; as,

Desirous of Glory.

Ignorant of Fraud.

Mindful of Favours.

Num. 13. This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia ; Quæ res ?*

NOTE, 1. That these Adjectives which thus govern the Genitive ; as
if they were Substantives, are generally such as signify Quantity ; as,
Multum, tantum, quantum, plus, plurimum.

NOTE, 2. That *Plus* and *Quid* always govern the Genitive, and upon
that Account are by many thought real Substantives.

Num. 14. To this Rule belong,

1. Adjectives of DESIRE ; as, *Cupidus, ambitiosus, avarus, studiosus, curiosus.*

2. OF KNOWLEDGE ; as, *Peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, do-
ctus, docilis, præcius, præfagus, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, consultus, &c.*

3. OF IGNORANCE ; as, *Ignarus, rudis, imperitus, nescius, inscius, in-
certus, dubius, anxius, sollicitus, immemor.*

4. OF GUILT ; as, *Consciens, convictus, manifestus, suspectus, reus.*

5. Verbals in AX and NS ; as, *Edax, capax, ferax, fugax, tenax, pervicax :
And Amans, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, sitiens, negligens, &c.*

6. To which may be referred, *Æmulus, munificus, parcus, proligus,
profusus, securus.*

R E G. II.

* **PARTITIVA** & partitive posita, Comparativa, Superlativa, Interrogativa, & quædam Numeralia, Genitivo plurali gaudent; ut,

a *Aliquis* b *Philosophorum.*

a *Senior* b *fratrum.*

a *Doctissimus* b *Romanorum.*

a *Quis* b *nostrum?*

a *Una* b *Musarum.*

a *Octavus* b *sapientum.*

R E G. III.

ADJECTIVA significantia commodum vel incommodum, similitudinem vel dissimilitudinem, regunt Dativum; ut,

a *Utilis* b *bello.*

a *Perniciosus* b *reipublicæ.*

a *Similis* b *patri.*

R U L E II.

PARTITIVES and Words placed partitively, Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives, and some Numerals, govern the Genitive plural; as,

Some one of the Philosophers.

The elder of the Brothers.

The most learned of the Romans.

Which of us?

One of the Muses.

The eighth of the wise Men.

R U L E III.

ADJECTIVES signifying Profit or Disprofit, Likeness or Unlikeness, govern the Dative; as,

Profitable for War,

Pernicious to the Common-

Like his Father. (wealth.

L

Num. 15. NOTE, 1. That it is easy to know when this Rule takes place, by resolving the Genitive into *inter* with the Accus. or *de*, *e*, *ex*, with the Abl. as, *Optimus Regum*, The best of Kings, i. e. *Optimus inter Reges*, or *de*, *e*, *ex Regibus*.

NOTE, 2. That when there are two Substantives of different Genders, the Partitive, &c. rather agrees with the first than the last; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. *Leo animalium fortissimus*, Plin. Otherwise it is of the same Gender with the Substantive it governs; as, *Pauca animalium*, *Unaqueque feminarum*.

NOTE, 3. That Partitives, &c. take the Genitive singular of Collective Nouns, and do not necessarily agree with them in Gender; as, *Præstantissimus nostræ civitatis*, Cic. *Nympharum sanguinis una*, Virg.

Num. 16. NOTE, 1. That some of these Adjectives govern also the Genitive; as, *Amicus*, *inimicus*, *socius*, *vicinus*, *par*, *equalis*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *proprius*, *communis*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That Adjectives signifying Motion or Tendency to a Thing, choose rather the Accusative with AD, than the Dative; such as, *Proclivis*, *pronus*, *propensus*, *velox*, *celer*, *tardus*, *piger*, &c. as,

Est piger ad pœnas Princeps, ad præmia velox, Ovid.

NOTE, 3. That Adjectives signifying Fitness or the contrary, may have either of them; as, *Aptus*, *ineptus bello*, or *ad bellum*.

82 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

- 17 ¶ Verba in **BILIS** & **DUS** regunt **Dativum**; ut,
a Amandus vel a amabilis
b omnibus.

Verbals in **BILIS** and **DUS**
 govern the **Dative**; as,
 To be beloved of all Men.

R E G. IV.

- 18 * **A**DJECTIVA dimensionem significantia regunt **Accusativum** mensurae; ut,
Columna sexaginta b pedes
a alta.

R U L E IV.

ADJECTIVES signifying **Dimension** govern the **Accusative of Measure**; as,

A Pillar sixty Foot high.

R E G. V.

- 19 * **C**OMPARATIVUS regit **Ablativum** quod resolvitur per **QUAM**; ut,
a Dulcior b melle.
a Praestantior b auro.

R U L E V.

THE **Comparative Degree** governs the **Ablative**, which is resolved by **Quam**; as,
 Sweeter than Honey.
 Better than Gold.

R E G. VI.

- 20 * **D**IGNUS, *Indignus*, *Contentus*, *Præditus*, *Captus*, & *Fretus*: Item, *Natus*, *Satus*, *Ortus*, *Editus*,

R U L E VI.

THESE **Adjectives**, *Dignus*, *Indignus*, *Contentus*, *Præditus*, *Captus*, and *Fretus*: Also *Natus*, *Satus*, *Or-*

Num. 17. OF or BY is the ordinary Sign of this **Dative**.

NOTE, That **Participles** of the **Preter Tense**, and **Passive Verbs** also, especially among the **Poets**, have frequently the **Dative**, instead of the **Ablative** with **A** or **AB**; as, *Nullus eorum mihi visus est*, None of them was seen by me; *Non audior ulli*, I am not heard by any.

Num. 18. The **Adjectives** of **DIMENSION** are, *Altus*, high or deep; *crassus* or *densus*, thick; *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *profundus*, deep. The **Names** of **MEASURE** are, *Digitus*, an Inch; *palmus*, an Handbreath; *pes*, a Foot; *cubitus*, a Cubit; *ulna*, an Ell; *passus*, a Pace, &c.

NOTE, 1. That **Verbs** signifying **Dimension** likewise have the **Accusative of Measure**; as, *Patet tres ulnas*, It is three Ells large, *Virg.*

NOTE, 2. That sometimes the Word of **Measure** is put in the **Ablative**; as, *Fossa sex cubitis alta*, *duodecim lata*, *Liv.* *Venter ejus exstat sesquipedem*, *Perf.* And sometimes, but rarely, in the **Genitive**; as, *Nec longiores duodenam pedum*, *Plin.*

Num. 19. Let the following Examples be observed and imitated: *Multo melior*, Much better, *Nihil pejor*, Nothing worse. *Major solito*, Greater than usual. *Quo diligentior es, eo doctior evades*, The more diligent you are, the more learned you will become. *Quanto superbior, tanto vilior*, The prouder, the less worth. *Nihil virgilio doctius*, There is none more learned than *Virgil*.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 33

& similia, Ablativum petunt ; ut,

- a Dignus b honore.
- a Præditus b virtute.
- a Contentus b parvo.
- a Captus b oculis.
- a Fretus b viribus.
- a Ortus b regibus.

R E G. VII.

ADJECTIVUM copiae aut inopiae regit Genitivum vel Ablativum ; ut,

- a Plenus b iræ vel b ira.
- a Inops b rationis.

II. REGIMEN Verborum.

§ 1. Personalium.

R E G. I.

* **S**UM quoties possessionem, proprietatem, aut officium significat, regit Genitivum ; ut,

a Est b regis punire rebelles.

b Insipientis a est dicere non putarum.

b Militum a est suo duci parere.

¶ Excipiuntur hi Nominativi, Meum, tuum, suum,

tus, Editus, and the like, require the Ablative ; as,

Worthy of Honour.

Endued with Virtue.

Content with little.

Blind.

Trusting to his Strength.

Descended of Kings.

R U L E VII.

AN Adjective of Plenty or Want governs the Genitive or Ablative ; as,

- Full of Anger.
- Void of Reason.

II. The Government of Verbs.

§ 1. Of Personal Verbs.

R U L E I.

SUM when it signifies Possession, Property, or Duty governs the Genitive ; as,

It belongs to the King to punish Rebels.

It is the Property of a Fool to say, I had not thought.

It is the Duty of Soldiers to obey their General.

¶ These Nominatives, Me-23 am, tuum, suum, nostrum, ve-

L 2

Num. 21. NOTE 1. That Disentus, gravidus refertus ; and orbus, vacuus, viduus, choose rather the Ablative : Indigus, compos and impos, the Genitive.

NOTE, 2. That some comprehend Opus and Usus, when they signify Necessity, under this Rule ; as, Quid opus est verbis ? What Need is there of Words ? Ovid. Nunc viribus usus, Now there is Need of Strength, Virg. But it is to be remarked, that these are Substantive Nouns, the very same with Opus, operis, a Work, and Usus, usus, Use ; and have the Ablative after them, because of the Preposition IN, which is understood. Sometimes Opus hath the Nominative by Num. 3. as, Dux nobis opus est, We stand in Need of a Leader. It is elegantly joined with the Participle Perfect ; as Consulto, maturato, invento, facto, &c. opus est, We must advise, make haste, find out, do, &c.

84 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

nostrum, vestrum; ut,

^b Tuum ^a est id procurare.

R E G. II.

24* **M**ISEREOR, *mi-*
seresco, & satago,
regunt Genitivum; ut,

^a Misere ^b civium tuorum.

^a Satagit ^b rerum suarum.

R E G. III.

25 **E**ST pro habeo regit Da-
tivum personæ; ut,

^a Est ^b mihi liber.

^a Sunt ^b mihi libri.

R E G. IV.

26 **S**UM pro affero regit du-
os Dativos, unum per-
sonæ, alterum rei; ut,

^a Est ^b mihi ^c voluptati.

R E G. V.

27 **V**ERBUM significans
commodum vel incom-
modum regit Dativum; ut,
Fortuna ^a favet ^b fortibus.
^b Nemini ^a noceas.

strum are excepted; as,

It is your Duty to manage that.

R U L E II.

MISEREOR, *miseresco*
and *satago*, govern the
Genitive; as,

Take Pity on your Countrymen.

He hath his Hands full at home.

R U L E III.

EST taken for habeo [to
have] governs the Da-
tive of a Person; as,

I have a Book.

I have Books.

R U L E IV.

SUM taken for affero [to
bring] governs two Da-
tives, the one of a Person, and
the other of a Thing; as,

It is [brings] a Pleasure to me.

R U L E V.

AVERB signifying Advan-
tage or Disadvantage go-
vern the Dative; as,
Fortune favours the Brave.
Do Hurt to no Man.

Num. 23. To these last may be added Possessive Nouns, such as, *Re-*
gium, humanum, belluinum, and the like; as, *Humanum est errare,* It is
incident to Man to err.

NOTE, That to all those are understood *Officium, opus, negotium,* or
some other Word to be gathered from the Sentence; as, *Me Pompeii*
totum esse scis. You know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's
Interest, *Cic. i. e. amicum, factorem,* or the like.

Num. 25. This is more elegant than *Habeo librum,* or *Habeo libros.*

So *Desum* is used elegantly for *Careo*; as, *Desunt mihi libri,* for *Careo*
libris, I want Books.

Num. 26. NOTE, That other Verbs, such as, *Do, duco, verto, tri-*
buo, habeo, relinquo, &c. may have two Datives; as, *Hoc tibi laudi datur,*
You are praised for this, *Ne mihi vitio vertas,* Do not blame me.

To this may be referred such Expressions as these, *Est mihi nomen*
Joanni, my Name is John; which is more elegant than *Est mihi nomen*
Joannes or *Joannis.*

Num. 27. This is a very general Rule, and (when we signify a Thing

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 85

R E G. VI.

VERBUM activè significans regit Accusativum ; ut,

^a Ama ^b Deum.

^a Reverere ^b parentes.

* Recordor, memini, reminiscor, & obliviscor, regunt Accusativum, vel Genitivum ; ut,

^a Recordor ^b lectionis vel ^b lectionem.

^a Obliviscor ^b injuriæ vel ^b injuriam.

R U L E VI.

VERB signifying ac-28
tively governs the Accu-
sative ; as,

Love God.

Reverence your Parents.

Recordor, memini, reminiscor, and obliviscor, govern the Accusative or Genitive ; as,
I remember my Lesson.

I forget an Injury.

to be acquired to any Person or Thing) almost common to all Verbs. But in a more particular manner are comprehended under it,

1. To PROFIT or HURT ; as *Commodo, proficio, placeo, consulo, noceo, officio*. But *lædø* and *offendo* govern the *Accus.*

2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their Contraries ; as, *Faveo, annuo, arrideo, assentior, adstipulor, gratulor, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulator, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, studeo, supplico, &c.* Also *Auxilior, adminiculor, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor* : Also *Derogo, detrabo, invidéo, &c.* But *Juvo* has the *Accus.*

3. To COMMAND, OBEY, or RESIST ; as, *Impero, precipio, mando ; Pareo, servio, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, moremgero, morigeror, famulor ; Pugno, repugno, certo, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, adversar, refragor, &c.* But *Jubeo* governs the *Accus.*

4. To THREATEN or to be ANGRY with ; as, *Minor, indignor, irascor, succenseo*.

5. To TRUST ; as, *fido, confido, credo*.

6. Verbs compounded with *SATIS, BENE, and MALE* ; *Satisfacio, benefacio, benedico, malefacio, maledico*.

7. The COMPOUNDS of the Verb *SUM* ; as, *Adsum, profum, obsum*.

8. Verbs compounded with these ten PREPOSITIONS, *Ad, ante, contra, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, and super* ; as, 1. *Adsto, accumbo, acquiesco, assideo, adhæreo, admoveo*. 2. *Antecello, anteeo, anteverto*. 3. *Consono, commisceo, condono, commorior*. 4. *Illudo, immorior, inhæreo, insideo, inbio, initor, invigilo, incumbo*. 5. *Interpono, intervenio, intersero*. 6. *Obrepro, obtrecto, occumbo*. 7. *Postpono, posthæreo*. 8. *Præeo, præstat* for *excellit, praluceo*. 9. *Succedo, submitto, subjicio*. 10. *Supersto, supervenio*.

NOTE, 1. That *TO*, the Sign of the Dative, is frequently understood.

NOTE, 2. That *TO* is not always a Sign of the Dative, for, 1. Verbs of Local Motion, as, *Eo, venio, proficiscor* : And, 2. These Verbs *Provo- co, voco, invito, hortor, specto, pertineo, attineo*, and such like, have the Accusative with the Preposition *ad*.

Num. 28, NOTE, That Neuter and Intransitive Verbs have sometimes an Accusative after them. 1. Of their own or the like Signification ; as, *Vivere vitam, Gaudere gaudium, Suture sanguinem, Olerè hircum*. 2. When taken in a Metaphorical Sense ; as, *Ardebat Alexin, i. e. Vehementer amabat*.

Verbs signifying,

VERBA activa alium und cum Accusativo casum regentia.

- 30 * 1. *VERBA* accusandi, damnandi & absolvendi, cum Accusativo personæ, regunt etiam Genitivum criminis ; ut,

a Arguit b me bb furti.

b Meipsum bb inertiae a condemnno.

b Illum ob homicidii a. absolvunt.

- 31 * 2. Verba comparandi, dandi, narrandi, & auferendi, regunt Dativum cum Accusativo ; ut,

Active *VERBS* governing another Case together with the Accusative.

1. *VERBS* of Accusing, Condemning, and Acquitting, with the Accusative of the Person, govern also the Genitive of the Crime ; as,

He accuses me of Theft.

I condemn myself of Laziness.

They acquit him of Manslaughter.

2. *VERBS* of Comparing, Giving, Declaring, and Taking away, govern the Dative with the Accusative ; as,

Num. 30. 1. Verbs of ACCUSING are, *Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, arguo, alligo, astringo, defero, incuso, insimulo, postulo, &c.*

2. Verbs of CONDEMNING, are, *Damno, condemnno, convinco, &c.*

3. Verbs of ABSOLVING are, *Solvo, absolvo, libero, purgo, &c.*

NOTE, 1. That the Genitive may be changed into the Ablative, either with or without a Preposition ; as, *Purgo te hac culpa*, or *de hac culpa*, I clear you of this Fault. *Eum de vi condemnnavit*, He found him guilty of a Riot, *Cic.*

NOTE, 2. That the Genitive, properly speaking, is governed by some Ablative understood, such as, *Crimine, pœnâ, actione, causâ* ; as, *Accusare furti*, i. e. *Crimine furti*. *Condemnare capitis*, i. e. *pœnâ capitis*.

NOTE, 3. That *Crimine, pœnâ, actione, capite, morte*, scarcely admit of a Preposition.

Num. 31. 1. To Verbs of COMPARING belong also Verbs of preferring or postponing.

2. To Verbs of GIVING belong Verbs of Receiving, promising, paying, sending, bringing.

3. To *VERBS* of DECLARING belong Verbs of Explaining, shewing, denying, &c.

4. Verbs of TAKING away are, *Aufero, adimo, eripio, eximo, demo, furripio, detraho, tollo, excutio, extorqueo, arceo, defendo, &c.*

NOTE, 1. That many of these Verbs govern the Dative, by Num. 27.

NOTE, 2. That innumerable other Verbs may have the Dative with the Accusative, when together with the Thing done is also signified the Person or Thing to, or for whom it is done ; as *Doce mihi filium*, Teach me my son ; *Cura mihi hanc rem*, Take care of this affair for me.

NOTE, 3. That *Comparo, confero, compono*, have frequently the Ablative with *cum*.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 87

* *Comparo* ^b *Virgilium* ^{bb} *Homero.*

I compare *Virgil* to *Ho-mer.*

^b *Suum* ^{bb} *cuique* ^a *tribuito.*

Give every Man his own.

* *Narras* ^b *fabulam* ^{bb} *surdo.*

You tell a Story to a deaf Man

* *Eripuit* ^b *me* ^{bb} *morti.*

He rescued me from Death.

* 3. VERBA rogandi & docendi duos admittunt Accusativos, priorem personæ, posteriorem rei ; ut,

3. VERBS of Asking and Teaching admit of two Accu-

^a *Posce* ^b *Deum* ^{bb} *veniam.*

satives, the first of a Person, and the second of a Thing ; as,

* *Docuit* ^b *me* ^{bb} *Grammaticam.*

Beg Pardon of God.

He taught me Grammar.

A N N O T A T I O.

* Quorum activa duos Casus regunt, eorum passiva posteriorem retinent ; ut,

The Passives of such Active Verbs as govern two Cases,

do still retain the last of them ; as,

^a *Accusor* ^b *furti.*

I am accused of Theft.

Virgilius ^a *comparatur* ^b *Homero.*

Virgil is compared to *Ho-mer.*

^a *Doceor* ^b *Grammaticam.*

I am taught Grammar.

R E G. VII.

R U L E VII.

* PRETIUM rei à quovis Verbo in Ablativo regitur ; ut,

THE Price of a Thing is governed in the Ablative by any Verb ; as,

Num. 32. NOTE 1. That among the Verbs that govern two Accusatives, are also reckoned these following :

1. CELO ; as, *Cela hanc rem uxorem*, Conceal this from your Wife, *Plaut.* But we can say also, *Celo te de hac re*, and *Celo tibi hanc rem.*

2. Verbs of CLOATHING ; as, *Induit se calceos*, He put on his Shoes. But these have more commonly the Ablative of the Thing without a Preposition ; as, *Vestit se purpurâ*, He cloathes himself with Purple. *Induo* and *Exuo* have frequently the Person in the Dative, and the Thing in the Accusative ; as, *Thoracem sibi induit*, He put on his Breast-plate.

3. MONEO ; as, *Id unum te moneo*, I put you in mind of this one Thing. But, unless it is some general Word, [as, *Hoc*, *illud*, *id*, &c.] *Moneo*, *admoneo*, *commonefacio*, have either the Genitive, as, *Admoneo te officii*, I put you in Mind of your Duty ; or the Ablative with *de* ; as, *De hac re te sæpius admonui*, I have frequently warned you of this.

NOTE 2. That Verbs of Asking often change the Accusative of the Person into an Ablative with the Preposition ; as, *Oro, exoro, peto, postula, hoc à te*, I intreat this of you ; Some always ; as, *Contendo, quaro, scitor, sciscitor hoc à te*. Finally, some have the Accusative of the Person, and the Ablative of the Thing with *de* ; as, *Interrogo, consulo, percontor te de hac re.*

^a *Emi librum duobus* ^b *affi-*
bus.

^a *Vendidit hic* ^b *auro pa-*
triam.

Demosthenes ^a *docuit* ^b *ta-*
lento.

35 * *Excipiuntur hi Geniti-*
vi, Tanti, quanti, pluris, mi-
noris ; ut,

^b *Quanti* ^a *constitit ?*

Assē & b pluris.

36 * *VERBA æstimandi re-*
gunt hujusmodi Genitivos,
Magni, parvi, nihili, &c. ut,

^a *Æstimo te* ^b *magni.*

R E G. VIII.

37 * *VERBA copię & ino-*
pię plerumque Ab-
lativum regunt ; ut,

^a *Abundat* ^b *divitiis.*

^a *Caret omni* ^b *culpā.*

38 * *Utor, abutor, fruor, fun-*
gor, potior, vescor, regunt
Ablativum ; ut,

^a *Utitur* ^b *fraude.*

^a *Abutitur* ^b *libris.*

I bought a Book for two
Shillings.

This Man sold his Country
for Gold.

Demosthenes taught for a
Talent.

These Genitives, Tanti, quan-
ti, pluris, minoris, are except-
ed ; as,

How much cost it ?

A Shilling and more.

VERBS of valuing govern
such Genitives as these, Magni,
parvi, nihili, &c. as,

I value you much.

R U L E VIII.

VERBS of Plenty and
Scarceness for the most
part govern the Ablative ; as,

He abounds in Riches.

He has no Fault.

Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor,
potior, vescor, govern the Ab-
lative ; as,

He uses Deceit.

He abuses Books.

Num. 35. NOTE, That if the Substantive be expressed, they are put
in the Ablative ; as, Quanto pretio ? Minore mercede.

Num. 36. 1. Verbs of Valuing are, Æstimo, pendo, facio, habeo, ducō,
puto, taxo.

2. The rest of the Genitives are, Minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, pluris,
majoris, plurimi, maximi, nauci, stocci, pili, affis, teruncii, hujus : Allo Æqui
and boni after facio and consulo.

NOTE, 1. That we say also, Æstimo magnō, parvō, supple pretio.

NOTE, 2. That Alvarus excludes majoris, as wanting Authority.
But there is an Example of it to be found in Phædrus, II. 5. 35.

Multo majoris alapa mecum veneunt.

Num. 37. Sometimes they have the Genitive ; as, Æget aris, He
wants Money, Hor. Implentur veteris Bacchi, They are filled with old
Wine, Virg.

NOTE, That Verbs of Leading and Unloading, and the like, belong to
this Rule ; as, Navis oneratur mercibus, The Ship is loaded with Goods.
Levabo te hoc onere, I will ease you of this Burden. Liberavit nos metu,
He delivered us from Fear.

Nam. 38. To these Verbs add, Nitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, mūnero, com-

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 89

§ 2. *Regimen Verborum Impersonalium.*

R E G. IX.

VERBUM impersonale regit Dativum ; ut,
a Expedit b reipublicæ.
a Licet b nemini peccare.

* EXCEP. 1. *Refert & Interest* Genitivum postulant ; ut,

a Refert b patris.
a Interest b omnium.

* At *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, ponuntur in Accusativo plurali ; ut,
Non b mea, a refert.

* EXCEP. 2. *Hæc quinque, Misere, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, & piget*, regunt Accusativum personæ, cum Genitivo rei ; ut,

a Misere b me bb tui.
a Pœnitet b me bb peccati.
a Tædet b me bb vitæ.

* EXCEP. 3. *Hæc quatuor, Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet*, regunt Accusativum personæ cum Infinitivo ; ut,

§ 2. The Government of Impersonal Verbs.

R U L E IX.

AN Impersonal Verb governs the Dative ; as,
 It is profitable for the State.
 No Man is allowed to sin.

EXCEP. 1. *Refert and Interest* require the Genitive ; as,

It concerns my Father.
 It is the Interest of all.

But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the Accusative plural ; as,
 I am not concerned.

EXCEP 2. *These five, Misere, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, and piget*, govern the Accusative of a person, with the Genitive of a Thing ; as,

I pity you.
 I repent of my Sin.
 I am weary of my Life.

EXCEP. 3. *These four, Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet*, govern the Accusative of the Person with the Infinitive ; as,

M

munico, visito, beo, fido, impertior, dignor, nascor, creor, afficio, consto, prosequor, &c.

NOTE, That *Potior* sometimes governs the Genitive ; as, *Petiri hostium*, To get his Enemies into his Power. *Potiri rerum*, To have the chief Rule.

Num. 39. Such as these, *Accidit, contingit, evenit, conducit, expedit, lubet, libet, licet, placet, displicet, vacat, restat, præstat, liquet, nocet, dolet, sufficit, &c.* Together with the Dative they have commonly an Infinitive after them, which is supposed to supply the Place of a Nominative before them.

Num. 42. NOTE, That this Genitive is frequently turned into the Infinitive ; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse ; Tædet me vivere*, and so they fall into the following Rule.

a Delectat b me bb studere.
Non a decet b te bb rixari.

I delight to study.

It does not become you to scold.

§ 3. *REGIMEN Infinitivi, Participiorum, Gerundiorum, & Supinorum.*

R E G. X.

44 **U**NUM Verbum regit aliud in Infinitivo; ut,
a Cupio b discere.

R E G. XI.

45 **P**ARTICIPIA, Gerundia & Supina regunt Casum suorum verborum; ut,
a Amans b virtutem.
a Carens b fraude.

1. GERUNDIA.

46 1. **G**ERUNDIUM in DUM Nominativi Casus cum verbo [est] regit Dativum; ut,
a Vivendum est b mihi rectè.
a Moriendum est b omnibus.

47 2. Gerundium in DI regitur à Substantivis vel Adjectivis; ut,
a Tempus b legendi.
a Cupidus b discendi.

§ 3. The GOVERNMENT of the Infinitive, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.

R U L E X.

ONE Verb governs another in the Infinitive; as,
 I desire to learn.

R U L E XI.

PARTICIPLES, Gerunds, and Supines govern the Case of their own Verbs; as,
 Loving Virtue.
 Wanting Guile.

1. GERUNDS.

1. **T**HE Gerund in DUM, of the Nominative Case, with the Verb [est] governs the Dative; as,
 I must live well.
 All must die.

2. The Gerund in DI is governed by Substantives or Adjectives; as,
 Time of reading.
 Desirous to learn.

Num. 43. NOTE, That *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the Subjunctive Mood, UT being understood; as, *Oportet facias*. [You must do it] for *Oportet te facere*.

Attinet, Pertinet and *Spestat*, when used impersonally, (which rarely happens) have the Accusative with *ad*, as was observed above, p. 85.

Num. 44. Sometimes it is governed by Adjectives; as, *Cupidus & cupiens discere*.

NOTE, That the Verb *Cœpit* or *cœperunt* is sometimes understood; as, *Omnes mihi invidere*; supple *cœperunt*. They all began to envy me.

Num. 45. This Dative is frequently understood; as, *Eundum est*, (supple *nobis*) We must go.

NOTE, That this Gerund always imports Necessity, and the Dative after it is the Person on whom the Necessity lies.

Num. 47. 1. The Substantives are such as these, *Amor, causa, gratia, studium, tempus, occasio, ars, otium, voluntas, cupido, &c.*

2. The Adjectives are generally Verbals, mentioned Num. 14.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 91

3. Gerundium in DO Dativi Casûs regitur ab Adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem significantibus ; ut,

Charta a utilis b scribendo.

4. Gerundium in DUM Accusativi Casûs regitur à Præpositionibus *ad* vel *inter* ; ut,

Promptus a ad b audiendum.

Attentus a inter b docendum.

5. Gerundium in DO Ablativi Casûs regitur à Præpositionibus, *a, ab, de, e, ex, vel in* ; ut,

Pæna a à b peccando absterret.

* Vel sine Præpositione, ut Ablativus Modi v Causæ ; ut,

Memoria b excolendo a auge-

a Defessus sum b ambulando.

6. Gerundia Accusativum regentia vertuntur eleganter in Participia in DUS, quæ cum suis Substantivis in Genere, Numero & Casu concordant ; ut,

Petendum est pacem.

Tempus petendi pacem.

3. The Gerund in DO of 48 the Dative Case is governed by Adjectives signifying Usefulness or Fitness ; as,

Paper useful for writing.

4. The Gerund in DUM of 49 the Accusative Case is governed by the Prepositions *ad* or *inter* ; as,

Ready to hear.

Attentive in Time of teaching.

5. The Gerund in DO of 50 the Ablative Case is governed by the Prepositions, *a, ab, de, e, ex, or in* ; as,

Punishment frightens from sinning.

* Or without a Preposition, as the Ablative of Manner or Cause ; as,

The Memory is improved by exercising it.

I am wearied with walking.

6. Gerunds governing the 52 Accusative are elegantly turned into the Participles in DUS, which agree with their Substantives in Gender, Number and Case ; as,

Petenda est pax.

Tempus petendæ pacis.

M 2

Num. 48. The Adjective of Fitness is often understood ; as, *Non est solvendo*, He is not able to pay, [supple *aptus* or *par*.]

NOTE, That sometimes this Gerund is governed by a Verb ; as, *Epidicum querendo operam dabo*, I'll endeavour to find out Epidicus, Plaut.

Num. 49. NOTE, 1. That it hath sometimes, but very rarely, the Prepositions *ob* and *ante*, as, *Ob absolvendum munus*, For finishing your Task, Cic. *Ante domandum*, Before they are tamed or broken, Virg. speaking of Horses.

NOTE, 2. That what was the Gerund in Dum of the Nominative with the Verb *est*, *fuit*, &c. becomes the Accusative with *esse* ; as, *Om-nibus moriendum esse novimus*, We know that all must die.

Ad petendum pacem.
A petendo pacem.

Ad petendam pacem.
A petenda pace.

S U P I N A.

§3 * 1. Supinum in UM ponitur post verbum motus; ut,
a Abiit b deambulatum.

§4 * 2. Supinum in U ponitur post nomen adjectivum; ut,
a Facile b dictu.

S U P I N E S.

1. The Supine in UM is put after a Verb of Motion; as,
 He hath gone to walk.

2. The Supine in U is put after an Adjective Noun; as,
 Easy to tell, or to be told.

§2, Num. Add to these the Gerunds of *Fungor*, *fruor* and *potior*.

These Participles in DUS are commonly called GERUNDIVES.

NOTE, 1. That the Substantive must always be of the same Case that the Gerund was of.

NOTE, 2, That because of its noisy Sound, the Gerund in *di* is seldom changed into the Genitive Plural; but either the Accusative is retained; as, *Studio patres vestros videndi*, rather than *Patrum vestrorum videndorum*; or it is turned into the Genitive Plural, without changing the Gerund; as, *patrum vestrorum videndi studio*. Thus *Valla* and *Farnabius*; but see my *Gram. maj.* vol. 2. p. 276.

Num. 53. The Supine in UM is elegantly used with the Verb *Eo*, when we signify that one sets himself about the doing of a Thing; as, *In mea vita tu laudem is quaesitum?* Are you going to advance your Reputation at the Hazard of my Life? *Ter* And this is the Reason why this Supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the Place of the Future of the *Infin. Pass.*

Some general Remarks on the Construction of Participles, Gerunds and Supines.

NOTE, 1, That Participles, Gerunds, and Supines have a twofold Construction; one as they partake of the Nature of Verbs, by which they govern a certain Case after them; another, as they partake of the Nature of Nouns, and consequently are subject to the same Rules with them; Thus,

1. A Participle is always an Adjective agreeing with its Subst. by Num. 1.

2. A Gerund is a Substantive, and construed as follows; (1.) That in *dum* of the Nominative by Num. 2. of the Accus. by Num. 68. (2.) That in *di* by Num. 11. or 14. (3.) That in *do* of the Dat. by Num. 16. of the Ablat. by Num. 69. 71. or 55.

3. A Supine is also a Substantive, (1.) That in *um*, governed by *ad* understood, by Num. 68. (2.) That in *u* governed by *in* understood, by Num. 71.

NOTE, 2. That the Present of the Infinitive Active, the first Supine, and the Gerund in *dum*, with the Preposition *ad*, are thus distinguished: The Supine is used after Verbs of Motion; The Infinitive after any other Verbs; The Gerund in *dum* with *ad* after Adjective Nouns. But these last are frequently to be met with after Verbs of Motion; and Poets use also the Infinitive after Adjectives.

NOTE, 3. That the Present of the Infinitive Passive and the last Supine, are thus distinguished: The Supine hath always an Adjective before it; which the Infinitive hath not, unless (as I said) among Poets,

§ 4. Constructio CIRCUMSTANTIARUM.

I. *Causa, Modus & Instrumentum.*

R E G. XII.

* CAUSA, Modus & Instrumentum ponuntur

in Ablativo; ut,

a *Palleo* b *metu*.

a *Fecit suo* b *more*.

a *Scribo* b *calamo*.

2. *Locus.*

R E G. XIII.

* I. NOMEN oppidi ponitur in Ge-

§ 4. The Construction of Circumstances (a).

I. The Cause, Manner and Instrument.

R U L E XII.

THE Cause, Manner, and Instrument are put in

the Ablative; as,

I am pale for Fear.

He did it after his own Way.

I write with a Pen.

2. *Place.*

R U L E XIII.

THE Name of a Town is put in the Genitive,

(a) *Adjective Nouns*, but especially *Verbs*, have frequently some CIRCUMSTANCES going along with them in Discourse; the most considerable whereof, with respect to Construction, are these five; 1. The Cause or Reason why any Thing is done. 2. The Way or Manner how it is done. 3. The Instrument or Thing wherewith it is done. 4. The Place where. And 5. the Time when it is done.

Num. 55. NOTE, 1. That the Cause is known by the Question CUR? or QUARE? *Why? Wherefore?* &c. The MANNER by the Question QUOMODO? *How?* and the INSTRUMENT by the Question QUOCUM? *Wherewith?*

NOTE, 2. That the Preposition is frequently express'd with the Cause and Manner; as, *Pro gaudio*, For Joy. *Propter amorem*, For Love. *Ob culpam*, For a Fault. *Cum summo labore*, With great Labour. *Per dedecus*, With Disgrace. But the Preposition [CUM] is never added to the Instrument: For we cannot say, *Scribo cum calamo*; *cum oculis vidi*.

NOTE, 3. But here we must carefully distinguish between the Instrument, and what is called the *Ablativus Comitatus*, or Ablative of Concomitancy, i. e. signifying that something was in Company with another; for then the Preposition [CUM] is generally express'd; as, *Ingressus est cum gladio*, He entered with a Sword, i. e. Having a Sword with him or about him.

NOTE, 4. That to Cause some refer, the Matter of which any Thing is made; as, *Clypeus ære fabricatus*, A Shield made of Brass; But (except with the Poets) the Preposition is for the most part express'd.

NOTE, 5. That to Manner some refer the Adjunct, i. e. something joined to another Thing; as, *Terra amœna floribus*, A Land pleasant with Flowers. *Mons nive candidus*, A Hill white with Snow.

NOTE, 6. That to Instrument some refer *Conficior dolore, inedia, &c. Prosequor odio, amore, &c. Afficio te honore, contumeliâ, &c. Lacesso verbis asperis, &c.*

94 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

nitivo, cùm quæstio fit per *when the Question is made by*
UBI ; ut,

a Vixit b Romæ.

a Mortuus est b Londini.

UBI, [Where] as,

He lived at Rome.

He died at London.

57 * **EXCEP.** Si verò sit ter-
 tiæ Declinationis, aut Plura-
 lis Numeri, in Ablativo ef-
 fertur ; ut,

a Habitat b Carthagine.

a Studuit b Parisiis.

EXCEP. But if it is of the
 third Declension, or of the Plu-
 ral Number, it is express'd in the
 Ablative ; as,

He dwells at Carthage.

He studied at Paris.

58 * 2. Cùm quæstio fit per
QUO, nomen oppidi in Ac-
 cusativo regitur ; ut,

a Venit b Edinburgum.

a Profectus est b Athenas.

2. *When the Question is made*
by QUO, [Whither] the Name
of a Town is governed in the
Accusative ; as,

He came to Edinburgh.

He went to Athens.

59 * 3. Si quærat per UN-
DE vel **QUA**, nomen oppi-
 di ponitur in Ablativo ; ut,

a Discessit b Aberdoniâ.

b Laodiceâ iter a faciebat.

3. *If the Question is made by*
UNDE, [Whence] or **QUA**,
 [By or through what Place]
the Name of a Town is put in
the Ablative ; as,

He went from Aberdeen.

He went through Laodicea.

60 * 4. *Domus* & *Rus* eodem
 modo quo oppidorum nomi-
 na construuntur ; ut,

Manet Domi, He stays at home. *Domum revertitur*, He re-
 turns home. *Domo arcessitus sum*, I am called from home.
Vivit rure or *ruri*. *Abiit rus*. *Rediit rure*.

4. *Domus and Rus are con-*
strued the same Way as Names
of Towns ; as,

61 5. *Nominibus regionum*,
provinciarum, & aliorum lo-
corum, non dictis, præposi-
tio ferè additur ; ut,

UBI ? *Natus in Scotia, in Fisa, in urbe, &c*

QUO ? *Abiit in Scotiam, in Fisam, in [vel ad] urbem, &c.*

UNDE ? *Rediit è Scotia, è Fisa, ex urbe, &c.*

QUA ? *Transit per Scotiam, per Fisam, per urbem, &c.*

5. *To Names of Countries,*
Provinces, and other Places,
not mentioned, the Preposition
is generally added ; as,

Num. 56, &c. NOTE, I. That the Preposition is frequently added to
Names of Towns, (especially when the Question is Quo ? Unde ? or Qua ?)
and sometimes omitted to Names of Countries, Provinces, &c.

A N N O T A T I O.

* *Distantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in Accusativo, interdum & in Ablativo ; ut,*

*Glasqua^a distat Edinburgo triginta^b millia passuum.
b Iter vel^b itinere unius diei.*

3. *Tempus.*

R E G. XIV.

* 1. **T**EMPUS ponitur in Ablativo, cum quaestio fit per QUANDO ; ut,

a Venit b hora tertiâ.

* 2. Cum quaestio fit per QUAMDIU, tempus ponitur in Accusativo vel Ablativo ; sed sæpius Accusativo ; ut,

*a Mansit paucos b dies.
Sex b mensibus a absuit.*

The Distance of one Place⁶² from another is put in the Accusative, and sometimes in the Ablative ; as,

*Glasgow is thirty Miles distant from Edinburgh.
One Day's Journey.*

3. *Time.*

R U L E XIV.

1. **T**IME is put in the Ablative, when the Question is made by QUANDO, [When] as,

He came at three o'Clock.

2. When the Question is made by QUAMDIU, [How long] Time is put in the Accusative or Ablative, but oftener in the Accusative ; as,
*He staid a few Days.
He was away six Months.*

NOTE, 2. That *Humi*, *Militia* and *Belli* are also used in the Genitive, when the Question is made by *Ubi* ? as, *Procumbit humi*, He lies down on the Ground. *Domi militiaeque unâ fuimus*, We were together both at home and abroad, or in Peace and War. *Ter. Belli domique agitabatur*, Was managed both in Peace and War. *Sall.*

NOTE, 3. That when the Name of a Town is put in the Genitive, in *urbe* is understood, and therefore we cannot say, *Natus est Roma urbis nobilis*, but *urbe nobili*.

¶ These Rules concerning Names of Towns may be thus exprest ;

The Name of a TOWN after { IN or AT
TO or UNTO
FROM or THROUGH } is put { Gen. or Abl. †
in the { Accusative.
Ablative.

† i. e. When it is of the third Declension, or of the Plural Number. But when AT signifies about or near a Place, we make use of the Preposition *ad* ; as, *Bellum quod ad Trojam gesserat*, *Virg.*

Num. 63 and 64. These two Rules may be thus exprest ;

1. Nouns that denote a precise TERM of TIME are put in the Ablative.

2. Nouns that denote CONTINUANCE of Time are put in the Accusative or Ablative.

96 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

De Ablativo absoluto.

R E G. XV.

65* **S**UBSTANTIVUM cum Participio, quorum Casus à nulla alia dictione pendet, ponuntur in Ablativo absoluto; ut,

^a Sole ^b oriente fugiunt tenebræ.

^a Opere ^b peracto ludemus.

III. Constructio Vocum Indeclinabilium.

I. Adverbiorum.

66* I. **A**DVERBIA quædam temporis,

Of the Ablative absolute.

R U L E XV.

A SUBSTANTIVE with a Participle, whose Case depends upon no other Word, are put in the Ablative absolute; as,

The Sun rising [or, while the Sun riseth] Darkness flies away.

Our Work being finished [or, when our Work is finished] we will play.

III. The Construction of Words Indeclinable.

I. Of Adverbs.

I. **S**OME Adverbs of Time, Place, and

Num. 65. NOTE, 1. This *Ablative* is called ABSOLUTE or Independent, because it is not directed or determined by any other Word; for if the *Substantive* (which is principally to be regarded) hath a Word before, that should govern it, or a *Verb* coming after, to which it should be a *Nominative*, then the Rule does not take Place.

NOTE, 2. That *Having*, *Being*, or a Word ending in *ing*, are the ordinary Signs of this *Ablative*.

NOTE, 3. That (to prevent our mistaking the true *Substantive*) when a *Participle-perfect* is Englished by *HAVING*, we are carefully to advert, whether it is *Passive* or *Deponent*. If it is *Passive*, we are to change it into *BEING*, its true *English*. If it is *Deponent*, there needs no Change, for *HAVING* is the proper *English* of it. The Use of this Note will appear by the following Example.

James having said these Things, } *Jacobus hæc locutus abiit.* Dep.

James, these Things being said, } *Jacobus his dictis abiit.* Pass.

Having promised a great Reward. } *Pollicitus magnam mercedem.* Dep.

A great Reward being promised. } *Magnâ mercede promissâ.* Pass.

NOTE, 4. That when there is no *Participle* express in Latin, *existente* [being] is understood; as, *Me puero*, I being a Boy. *Saturno Rege*, Saturn being King. *Civitate nondum liberâ*, The State not being yet free.

NOTE, 5. That the *Participle* may be resolved into *Dum*, *cum*, *quando*, *si*, *postquam*, &c. [While, seeing, when, if, after,] with the *Verb*, either in *English* or *Latin*.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 97

loci, & quantitatis regunt Genitivum; ut,

a *Pridie illius* *b* *diei.*

a *Ubique* *b* *gentium.*

a *Satis est* *b* *verborum.*

* 2. Quædam Adverbia derivata regunt Casum primitivorum; ut,

b *Omnium* *a* *elegantissime* loquitur.

Vivere *a* *convenienter* *b* *naturæ.*

2. Præpositionum.

1. PRÆPOSITIONES

Ad, apud, ante, &c. Accusativum regunt; ut,

a *Ad* *b* *patrem.*

2. Præpositiones *A, ab, abs, &c.* regunt Ablativum; ut,

a *A* *b* *patre.*

3. Præpositiones *In, sub, super & subter,* regunt Accusativum cum motus ad locum significatur; ut,

Eo *a* *in* *b* *scholam.*

a *Sub* *b* *mœnia tendit,* Virg.

Incidit *a* *super* *b* *agmina,* Id.

Ducit *a* *subter* *b* *fastigia templi,* Id.

¶ At si motus vel quies in loco significetur, *In & sub* regunt Ablativum; *Super & subter* vel Accusativum vel Ablativum; ut,

Sedeo vel discuro *a* *in* *b* *schola.*

Recubo vel ambulo *a* *sub* *b* *umbra.*

Sedens *a* *super* *b* *arma,* Virg.

b *Fronde* *a* *super* *viridi.* Id.

Quantity, govern the Genitive; as,

The Day before that Day,
Every where.

There's enough of Words.

2. Some Derivative Adverbs govern the Case of their Primitives; as,

He speaks the most elegantly of all.

To live agreeably to Nature.

2. Of Prepositions:

1. THE Prepositions, Ad68

apud, ante, &c. govern the Accusative; as,
To the Father.

2. The Prepositions *A, ab, abs, &c.* govern the Ablative; as,

From the Father.

3. The Prepositions, *In sub, super and subter,* govern the Accusative when Motion to a Place is signified; as,

I go into the School.

He goes under the Walls.

It fell upon the Troops.

He brings [him] under the Roof of the House.

¶ But if Motion or Rest in a Place be signified, *In and sub* govern the Ablative; *Super and subter* either the Accusative or Ablative; as,

I sit or run up and down in the School.

I ly or walk under the Shadow.

Sitting above the Arms.

Upon the green Grass.

98 Rudiments, of the Latin Tongue,

Vene ^a *subter* ^b *cutem* *dis-*
persæ, Plin.

^a *Subter* ^b *littore*, Catull.

The Veins dispersed under
the Skin.

Beneath the Shore.

72 4. ¶ *Præpositio* in compo-
sitione eundem sæpe casum
regit quem extra ; ut,

^a *Adeamus* ^b *scholam*.

^a *Exeamus* ^b *schola*.

4. ¶ *A Preposition* oft times
governs the same Case in Com-
position that it does without it ;
as,

Let us go to the School.

Let us go out of the School.

¶ The Prepositions, with the Cases they govern,
are contained in these Verses.

1. Hæ quantum adfiscunt casum sibi præposituræ ;

Ad, *penes*, *adversum*, *cis*, *citra*, *adversus*, & *extra*,

Ultra, *post*, *præter*, *juxta*, *per*, *pone*, *secundum*,

Erga, *apud*, *ante*, *secus*, *trans*, *supra*, *propter*, & *intra*,

Quæ addas *contra*, *circum*, *circa*, *inter*, *ob*, *infra*.

2. Hæ sextum possunt ; *A*, *cum*, *tenu*, *abs*, *ab*, & *absque*,

Atque *palam*, *pro*, *præ*, *clam*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *sine*, *coram*.

3. *Sub*, *super*, *in*, *subter*, quantum sextumque requirunt.

NOTE, 1. That *Versus* and *Usque* are put after their Cases ; as, *Itali-*
am versus, Towards Italy ; *Oceanum usque*, As far as the Ocean. But (as
we have already observed, p. 67.) these are properly *Adverbs*, the
Preposition AD being understood.

NOTE, 2. That *Tenu* is also put after its Case ; as, *Mento tenu*, Up
to the Chin.

NOTE, 3. That *Tenu* governs the *Genitive Plural*, 1. When the Word
wants the *Singular* ; as, *Cumarem tenu*, As far as [the Town] *Cuma*.

2. When we speak of things of which we have naturally but two ;
as, *Crurum tenu*, Up to the Legs.

NOTE, 4. That *A* and *E* are put before *Consonants* ; *Ab* and *Ex* be-
fore *Vowels* and *Consonants* ; *Abs* before *t* and *q*.

NOTE, 5. That *subter* hath very rarely the *Ablat.* and only among
Poets.

NOTE, 6. That in English *IN* is commonly the Sign of the *Ablative*,
INTO of the *Accusative*.

NOTE, 7. *IN* for *erga*, *contra*, *per*, *supra*, *ad*, &c. governs the *Accus.*
as, *Amor in patriam*. *Quid ego in te commisi ?* *Crescit in dies singulos*. *Im-*
perium regum in proprios greges, Horat. *Pisces in cenam empti*. But *IN*
for *inter* governs the *Ablative* ; as, *In amicis habere*, Sallust.

SUB for *circa* governs the *Accusat.* as, *Sub cenam*.

SUPER for *ultra*, *præter*, and *inter*, governs the *Accusat.* as, *Super Ga-*
ramantas, Virg. *Super gratiam suam*, Sallust. *In sermone super cenam nato*,
Suet. For *de* it governs the *Ablat.* as, *Super hac re nimis*, Cic.

Num. 72. NOTE, That this Rule only takes Place when the *Prepo-*
sition may be dissolved from the Verb, and put before the Case by
itself ; as, *Alloquor patrem*, i. e. *Loquor ad patrem*. And even then the
Preposition is frequently repeated ; as, *Exire è sinibus suis*, Cæf.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 99

3. Interjectionum.

* I. INTERJECTIONES

O, *heu*, & *proh*, regunt Vocativum, interdum Accusativum; ut,

a O formose b puer.

a Heu b me miserum!

* 2. *Hei* & *Væ* regunt Dativum; ut,

a Hei b mihi!

a Væ b vobis.

4. Conjunctionum.

* I. CONJUNCTIONES

Et, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, & quædam alia, connectunt similes Casus & Modos; ut,

Honora b patrem a & b matrem.

Nec b scribit, a nec b legit.

2. *Ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utinam*, & *dummodo* Subjunctivo Modo ferè semper adhærent; ut,

Lego a ut b discam.

a Utinam b sapires.

3. Of Interjections.

1. THE Interjections O, 73

Heu, and **Proh**, govern the Vocative, and sometimes the Accusative; as,

O fair Boy.

Ah Wretch that I am!

2. *Hei* and *Væ* govern the Dative; as,

Ah me!

Woe to you,

4. Of Conjunctions.

1. THE Conjunctions Et, 75

ac, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple like Cases and Moods; as,

Honour your Father and Mother.

He neither writes nor reads.

2. *Ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utinam* and *dummodo* are for the most part joined with the Subjunctive Mood; as,

I read that I may learn.

I wish you were wise.

N 2

Num. 75. To these add *Quam*, *nisi*, *præterquam*, *an*, and *Adverbs of Likeness*. The Reason of this Construction is because the Words so coupled depend all upon the same Word, which is express'd to one of them and understood to the other.

Num. 76. To these add all indefinite Words, that is, *Interrogatives*, whether *Nouns*, *Pronouns*, *Adverbs* or *Conjunctions*, when taken in a doubtful or indefinite Sense, such as, *Quis*, *uter*, *quantus*, &c. *Ubi*, *quo*, *unde*, &c. *Cur*, *quare*, *quomobrem*, *num*, *an*, *anne*, &c. (See Page 65 and 70.) They generally become *Indefinites*, when another Word comes before them in the Sentence, such as *Scio*, *nescio*, *video*, *intelligo*, *dubito*, and the like; as, *Ubi est frater tuus? Nescio ubi sit. An venturus est? Dubito an venturus sit.*

NE the *Adverb of Forbidding*, requires the *Imperative* or *Subjunctive*; as, *Ne time*, or *ne timeas*. See Page 47.

Dum, *quam*, *quod*, *si*, *sin*, *ni*, *nisi*, *etsi*, *etiãmsi*, *priusquam*, *simulac*, *siquidem*, *quandoquidem*, &c. are joined sometimes with the *Indicative*, and sometimes with the *Subjunctive*.

SYNTAXEOS Synopsis.

Sive,

*Genuina & maximè necessaria
Constructionis Regulæ, ad
quas ceteræ omnes reducun-
tur,*

AXIOMATA.

I. **O**MNIS Oratio con-
stat ex Nomine &
Verbo.

II. Omnis Nominativus ha-
bet suum Verbum expressum
vel suppressum,

III. Omne Verbum finitum
habet suum Nominativum ex-
pressum vel suppressum.

IV. Omne Adjectivum ha-
bet suum Substantivum expres-
sum vel suppressum,

Sex Casuum Constructio.

I. **O**MNE Verbum fini-
tum, expressum vel
suppressum, concordat cum
Nominativo, expresso vel sup-
presso, in Numero & Persona;
ut,

Puer legit.

[Homines] aiunt.

Romani [cœperunt] festinare.

A Summary of SYNTAX.

Or,

The true and most necessary
Rules of Construction, to
which all the rest are re-
duced.

First PRINCIPLES.

I. **E**VERY Speech [or Sen-
tence] consists of a
Noun and a Verb.

II. Every Nominative hath
its own Verb express or under-
stood,

III. Every finite Verb hath
its own Nominative express or
understood.

IV. Every Adjective hath
its own Substantive express or
understood.

The Construction of the six
Cases.

I. **E**VERY Verb of the Fi-
nite Mood, express or
understood, agrees with its No-
minative, express or understood,
in Number and Person; as,

The Boy reads.

They say.

The Romans made haste.

Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 101

II. Omnis Genitivus regitur à Substantivo expresso vel suppresso ; ut,

Liber fratris.

Est [officium] patris.

III. Dativus Acquisitionis, [i. e. cui aliquid acquiritur vel adimitur] cuivis Nomini aut Verbo expresso vel suppresso jungitur ; ut,

Dedi Petro.

Cui dedisti ?

[Dedi] Petro.

Utilis bello.

Non est [aptus] solvendo.

IV. Omnis Accusativus regitur à Verbo activo, vel † Præpositione, expressis vel suppressis ; ut,

Amo Deum ;

& [amo] parentes.

Ad patrem.

Abiit [ad] Londinum.

¶ Aut Infinitivo præponitur expressus vel suppressus ; ut,

Dicit se scribere.

Licet mihi [me] esse bonum.

V. Omnis Vocativus absolute ponitur, addita nonnunquam Interjectione O ; ut,

O Dave,

Heus Syre,

VI. Omnis Ablativus regitur à † Præpositione expressa vel suppressa ; ut,

A puero,

Exultat [præ] gaudio,

II. Every Genitive is governed by a Substantive expressed or understood ; as,

The Book of my Brother.

It is the Duty of a Father.

III. The Dative of Acquisition [i. e. to which any thing is acquired, or from which it is taken] is joined to any Noun or Verb expressed or understood ; as,

I gave it to Peter.

To whom did you give it ?

To Peter.

Profitable for war.

He is not able to pay.

IV. Every Accusative is governed by an active Verb, or a † Preposition, expressed or understood ; as,

I love God ;

and my Parents.

To the Father.

He hath gone to London.

¶ Or is put before the Infinitive expressed or understood ; as,

He says that he is writing.

I may be good,

V. Every Vocative is placed absolutely, the Interjection O being sometimes added ; as,

O Davus,

Come hither Syrus.

VI. Every Ablative is governed by a † Preposition expressed or understood ; as,

From a Child.

He leaps for Joy.

† See Page 67, and Larger Syntax, Page 97 and 98.

APPENDIX.

I. OMNE Adjectivum concordat cum Substantivo expresso vel suppresso, in Genere, Numero, et Casu; ut,

Bonus vir.

Triste [negotium.]

II. Substantiva significantia eandem rem conveniunt in Casu; ut,

Dominus Deus.

III. Omnis Infinitivus regitur à Verbo vel Nomine expressis vel suppressis; ut,

Cupio discere.

Dignus amari.

Populus [cœpit] mirari.

I. EVERY Adjective agrees with a Substantive expressed or understood, in Gender, Number, and Case; as,

A good Man.

A bad Thing.

II. Substantives signifying the same thing agree in Case; as,

The Lord God.

III. Every Infinitive is governed by a Verb or Noun expressed or understood; as,

I desire to learn.

Worthy to be loved.

The People wondered.

EXPLANATION.

ALL Construction is either TRUE or APPARENT, or, (as Grammarians express it) JUST or FIGURATIVE. TRUE Construction is founded upon the essential Properties of Words, and is almost the same in all Languages. APPARENT Construction entirely depends upon Custom, which, either for Elegance or Dispatch, leaves out a great many Words otherwise necessary to make a Sentence perfectly full and Grammatical. The first is comprised in these few Fundamental Rules, and more fully branched out in the Larger Syntax. The other is also interspersed thro' the Larger Syntax, but distinguished from that which is True by an Asterisk.

The Cases mentioned in the Rules of the Larger Syntax, immediately discover the Rules of this Summary to which they respectively belong; these that are True without any Ellipsis; these that are Figurative by having their Ellipsis supplied as follows, as they are numbered in the Margin.

To RULE II. are reduced Num. 13. supple negotium. Num. 14. and 47. sup. de causa, gratia, or in re, negotio. Num. 15. sup. è numero. Num. 21. sup. de negotio, Num. 22. and 23. sup. officium, negotium, &c. Num. 24. sup. 1. sat. taken from the Verb. 1. de causa, &c. Num. 29. sup. memoriam, notitiam, verba, &c. Num. 30. sup. de crimine, pœna, &c. Num. 35. and 36. sup. pro re, or pretio axis. Num. 40. sup. inter negotia, and res [fert] se ad negotia. Num. 42. sup. res, negotium, &c. Num. 56. sup. in urbe. Num. 60. Domi, sup. in adibus. Num. 66. these Adverbs seem to be taken for Substantive Nouns.

To RULE III. is reduced Num. 73, sup. malum est; or these Interjections are used as Substantives.

Part III. Chap. II. of Resolution. 103

TO RULE IV. belong Num. 18. 53. and 62. sup. ad. Num. 33. sup. quod ad. Num. 41. i. e. *Est inter mea negotia; Refert [or res fert] se ad mea negotia, &c.* Num. 58. sup. ad or in. Num. 64. sup. per. Num. 73. sup. *sentio, lugeo, &c.*

TO RULE VI. belong Num. 12. sup. *e, ex, or cum.* Num. 19. sup. *pra.* Num. 20. sup. *de, e, ex, cum, &c.* Num. 21. sup. *a, ab, &c.*

Num. 34. sup. *pro.* Num. 37. 38. sup. *a, ab, de, e, ex.* Num. 51. and 55. sup. *pra, cum, a, ab, e, ex, &c.* Num. 54. sup. *in or de.* Num. 57. sup. *in.* Num. 59. sup. *a, ab, e, ex.* Num. 62. sup. *in.* Num. 64. sup. *in or pro.* Num. 65. sup. *sub, cum, a, ab.*

NOTE, 1. That under *Verbs* must also be comprehended *Participles, Gerunds* and *Supines*, because the general Signification of *Verb* is included in them.

NOTE, 2. That as a Consequence of this a learned Grammarian ingeniously supposes that the *Dative* and *Infinitive* are always governed by a *Verb*, and that when they seem to be governed by a *Noun*, the *Participle existens* is understood; as *Utilis [existens] bello. Pollio praesidium [existens] reis. Dignus [existens] amari.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Vocative* is properly no part of a Sentence, but the Case by which we excite one to hear or execute what we say. Therefore when the *Vocative* is put before the *Imperative*, as frequently happens, the *Nominative TU* or *VOS* is understood; and that even tho' these Words be already express'd in the *Vocative*: as, *Tu Jacobe lege, i. e. O tu Jacobe, tu lege.*

NOTE, 4. That the *Vocative* is sufficient to itself, and does not necessarily require the *Interjection O.* See *Vossius, lib. VII. cap. 69.* and *Sanctius, lib. IV. de Ellipsi Verb. Audio & Narro.*

Of Exposition or Resolution.

C H A P. II.

EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the unfolding of a Sentence, and placing all the Parts of it, whether express'd or understood, in their proper Order, that the true Sense and Meaning of it may appear.

I. A SENTENCE is either *Simple* or *Compound.*

1. A SIMPLE Sentence is that which hath one *Finite Verb* in it.

2. A COMPOUND Sentence is that which hath two or more such Verbs in it joined together by some *Couples.*

These COUPLES are of four Sorts. 1. The *Relative QUI.* 2. Some *Comparative Words*, such as, *tantus, quantus; talis, qualis; tam, quam, &c.* 3. *Indefinite Words*, [See Page 70, and 99.] 4. *Conjunctions.*

In a Simple Sentence there are two Things to be considered, 1. Its *Essential.* 2. Its *Accidental Parts.*

1. The *Essential Parts* of a Sentence are a *Nominative* and a *Verb.*

2. The *Accidental Parts* are of four Kinds, 1. Such as excite *Attention*, as the *Vocative* and *exciting Particles*; as, *O, en, ecce, heus, &c.* 2. Such as serve to introduce a Sentence, or to shew its *Dependence* upon what was said before; as, *Jam, haecenus, quandoquidem, cum, dum, interea, &c.* 3. Such as limit the general and indefinite Signification either of the *Nominative* or *Verb*, and these are *Substantive Nouns.* 4. Such as qualify and explain them, viz.

104 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Adjectives, Adverbs, and Prepositions, with their Cases. Sometimes a Part of a compound Sentence supplies the Place of those two last kinds of Words;

II. The ORDER of Words in a Sentence is either *Natural* or *Artificial*.

1. NATURAL Order is when the Words of a Sentence naturally follow one after another, in the same Order with the Conceptions of our Minds.

2. ARTIFICIAL Order is when Words are so ranged as to render them most agreeable to the Ear; but so as the Sense be not thereby obscured.

III. A Sentence may be resolved from the *Artificial* into the *Natural* Order by the following Rules:

1. Take the *Vocative, Exciting, and Introductory* Words, where they are found.

2. The NOMINATIVE.

3. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, *i. e.* Words agreeing with, or governed by it, or by one another successively (till you come to the *Verb*) where they are found.

4. The VERB.

5. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, &c. where they are found, to the End of the Sentence.

6. Supply every where the Words that are understood.

7. If the Sentence is compound, take the Parts of it severally, as they depend upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

E X A M P L E.

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque latere, Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewell then, my [Son] Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear unto me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take Delight in such Writings and Instructions.

This Compound Sentence is resolved into these five Simple Sentences.

1. *Igitur mi [fili] Cicero, [tu] vale,* 2. *& [tu] persuade tibi esse quidem carissimum [filium] mihi;* 3. *sed [tu] persuade tibi te] fore cariorem [filium mihi in] multo [negotio]* 4. *si [tu] latere talibus monumentis,* 5. *& [si tu latere talibus] præceptis.*

NOTE, 1. That *Interrogative* Words stand always first in a Sentence, unless a *Preposition* comes before them.

NOTE, 2. That *Negative* Words stand immediately before the *Verb*.

NOTE, 3. That *Relatives* are placed before the Word by which they are governed, unless it is a *Preposition*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Subjunctive* Mood is used in Compound Sentences.

NOTE, 5. That the Parts of a Compound Sentence are separated from one another by these Marks called INTERPUNCTIONS. 1. These that are smaller, named *Clauses*, by this Mark (,) called a *Comma*. 2. These that are greater, named *Members*, by this Mark (:) called *Colon*, or this, (;) called a *Semicolon*. 3. When a Sentence is thrown in that hath little or no Connexion with the rest, it is inclosed within what we call a *Parenthesis*, marked thus ()

But when the Sentence, whether *Simple* or *Compound*, is fully ended, if it is a plain *Affirmation* or *Negation*, it is closed with this Mark (.) called a *Point*. If a Question is asked, with this Mark (?) called a *Point of Interrogation*. If *Wonder* or some other sudden *Passion* is signified, with this Mark (!) called a *Point of Admiration*.

F I N I S.

120076

MUSEUM

P R I M A

Morum & Pietatis

P R Æ C E P T A,

V I Z.

- I. *Dicta septem sapientum è Græcis.*
- II. *Gulielmi Lili Monita pædagogica.*
- III. *Dion. Catonis Disticha moralia.*
- IV. *Joan. Sulpitii Verulani de moribus & civilitate Puerorum Carmen.*
- V. *Rudimenta Pietatis, sive, Oratio Domitica, Symbolum Apostolicum & Decalogus; item duorum Sacramentorum, Baptismi & Sacra Cœna Domini, Institutiones.*

QUIBUS ACCESSIT

Summula CATECHISMI ad piam Juniorum Educationem
apprime utilis;

I T E M,

Præcipua Capita Christianæ Religionis, desumpta è sacra Scriptura
Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.

Timor Domini initium sapientia est, Prov. i. 7.

*Pietas ad omnia utilis est, promissiones habens & presentis & futura
vitæ, 1. Tim. iv. 8.*

E D I N B U R G I:

Apud WAL. RUDDIMANNUM, & SOCIOS.

Anno Domini 1769.



Dicta SAPIENTUM è Græcis,

D. Erasmo Roterod. Interprete.

*Aurea dicta, puer, quæ sunt hîc mente reconde :
Hinc poteris magnâ commoditate frui.*

Dicta PERIANDRI CORINTHII.

O MNIBUS placeto. Mortalia cogita.	
Bona res quies.	Ne prior injuriam facias.
Periculosa temeritas.	Audi quæ ad te pertinent.
Semper voluptates sunt mortales :	Probrum fugito.
Honores autem immortales.	Responde in tempore.
Amicis adversâ fortunâ utentibus idem esto.	Ea facito quorum te non possit pœnitere.
Lucrum turpe, res pessima.	Ne cui invidias.
Quicquid promiseris facito.	Oculis moderare.
Infortunium tuum celato, ne voluptate afficias inimicos.	Quod justum est imitare.
Veritati adhæreto.	Bene meritos honora.
Age quæ justa sunt.	Spem fove.
Violentiam oderis.	Calumniam oderis.
Principibus cede.	Astabilis esto.
Voluptati tempera.	Cùm errâris, muta consilium.
A jurejurando abstine.	Concordiam sectare.
Pietatem sectare.	Diuturnam amicitiam custodi.
Laudato honesta.	Magistratus metue.
A vitiis abstine.	Omnibus teipsum præbe.
Beneficium repende.	Ne loquaris ad gratiam.
Supplicibus misericors esto.	Ne tempori credideris.
Liberos instrue.	Teipsum ne negligas.
Sapientum utere consuetudine.	Seniorem reverere.
Litem oderis.	Mortem oppete pro patria.
Bonos in pretio habeto.	Ne quavis de re doleas.
Arcanum cela.	Ex ingenuis liberos crea.
Cede magnis.	Sperato tanquam mortalis :
Opportunitatem expectato.	Parcito tanquam immortalis.
	Ne efferaris gloriâ.
	Largire cum utilitate.

Amicis utere.

Mortuum ne irrideto.

Dilige amicos.

Consule inculpatè.

Dicta BIAN TIS PRIENENSIS.

IN speculo teipsum contem- Quid sit autem ausculta,
plare, & si formosus appa- Prius autem intellige; & de-
rebis, age quæ deceant for- inde ad opus accede.
mam: sin deformis, quod in Ne ob divitias laudâris vitum
facie minus est, vel deest, id indignum.
morum pensato pulchritu- Persuasionem cape, non vi.
dine.

Audito multa:

Loquere pauca.

De Numine ne malè loquaris:

Compara in adolescentia qui-
dem modestiam, in senectute
verò prudentiam.

Dicta PITTACI MITYLENÆI.

QUÆ facturus es, ea ne Infortunatum ne irriferis.
dixeris; frustratus enim Audito libenter.
rideberis.

Depositem redde.

Desidiosus ne esto.

A familiaribus in minutis re-
bus læsus, feras.

Amico de maledixeris.

Inimicum ne putes amicum.

Uxori dominare [*Christianè.*]

Quæ feceris parentibus, eadem
à liberis expecta.

Inter amicos ne fueris iudex.

Ne contende cum parentibus,
etiamsi iusta dixeris.

Ne geras imperium, priusquam
parere didiceris.

Ne lingua præcurrat mentem.

Ne festines loqui.

Nosce teipsum.

Legibus pare.

Voluptatem cœerce.

Ne quid nimis.

Inimicitiam solve.

Ante omnia venerare Numen.

Parentes reverere.

Quæ fieri non possunt, cave
concupiscas.

Uxorem ducito ex æqualibus;
ne, si ex ditioribus duxeris,
dominos tibi pares, non af-
fines.

Dicta CLEOBULI LINDII.

NE sis unquam elatus.
Domûs curam age.

Libros evolve.

Iustè iudicato.

Bonis benefacito.

Liberos tibi charissimos erudi.

A maledicentia temperato.

Suspicionem abjicito.

Parentes patientiâ vince.

Beneficii accepti memento.

Inferiorem ne rejicias.

Aliena ne concupiscas.

Ne teipsum præcipites in dis-
crimen.

Res amici diligas, ac perinde Citiùs ad infortunatos amicos,
 serves ut tuas, [num. quàm ad fortunatos proficif-
 Lapis auri index, aurum homi- cere,
 Quod oderis, alteri ne feceris. Mendax calumniâ vitam cor-
 Voto nihil pretiosius. rumpit.
 Ne cui miniteris; est enim mu- Mendaces odit quisque prudens
 liebre, & sapiens.

Dicta CHILONIS LACEDÆMONII.

Nosce te ipsum. Sapientiâ utere.
 Ne cui inideas mortalia. Multitudini place.
 Temperantiam exerce. Oderis calumnias.
 Turpia fuge. Ne quid suspiceris.
 Tempori parce. Moribus probatis esto.
 Iustè rem para. Ne fueris onerosus.

Dicta SOLONIS ATHENIENSIS.

Deum cole. Legibus pareto.
 Parentes reverere. Cogita quod justum est.
 Amicis succurre. Iracundiæ moderare.
 Veritatem sustineto. Virtutem laudato.
 Ne jurato. Malos odio prosequitor.

Dicta THALETIS MILESI.

Principem honora. Gloriam sectare.
 Amicos probato. Vitæ curam age.
 Similis tui sis. Pacem dilige.
 Nemini promittito. Laudatus esto apud omnes.
 Quod adest boni consulito. Sufurronem ex ædibus ejice.
 A vitis abstineto.

GULIELMI LILII *Monita pedagogica;**sive**Carmen de Moribus ad suos Discipulos.*

QUI mihi discipulus, puer, es, cupis atque doceri,
 Hue ades, hæc animo concipe dicta tuo.
 Manè citus lectum fuge, mollem discute somnum;
 Templa petas supplex, & venerare Deum.
 Attamen in primis facies sit lota manusque;
 Sint nitidæ vestes, comptaque cæsaries.
 Desidiam fugiens, cùm te schola nostra vocârit,
 Adlis; nulla pigræ sit tibi causa moræ.

Me Præceptorem cùm videris ore saluta,
Et condiscipulos ordine quosque tuos.
Tu quoque fac sed eas, ubi te sedisse jubemus :
Inque loco, nisi sis jussus abire, mane.
Ac magis ut quisque est doctrinæ munere clarus,
Hoc magis is clarâ sede locandus erit.
Scalpellum, calami, atramentum, charta, libelli,
Sint semper studiis arma parata tuis.
Si quid dictabo, scribes ; at singula rectè :
Nec macula, aut scriptis menda sit ulla tuis.
Sed tua nec laceris dictata aut carmina chartis
Mandes, quæ libris inseruisse decet.
Sæpe recognoscas tibi lecta, animoque revolvās :
Si dubites, nunc hos consule, nunc alios.
Qui dubitat, qui sæpe rogat, mea dicta tenebit ;
Is qui nil dubitat, nil capit inde boni.
Disce, puer, quæso ; noli dediscere quicquam :
Ne mens te insimulet conscia desidîæ.
Sisque animo attentus : quid enim docuisse juvabit,
Si mea non firmo pectore verba premas ?
Nil tam difficile est quod non solertia vincat :
Invigila, & parta est gloria militiæ.
Nam veluti flores tellus, nec semina profert,
Ni sit continuo victa labore manûs :
Sic puer, ingenium si non exercitet, ipsum
Tempus et amittit, spem simul ingenii.
Est etiam semper lex in sermone tenenda,
Ne nos offendat improba garrulitas.
Incumbens studio, submissâ voce loqueris ;
Nobis dum reddis, voce canorus eris.
Et quæcunque mihi reddes, discantur ad unguem ;
Singula & abjecto verbula redde libro.
Nec verbum quisquam dicturo suggerat ullum ;
Quod puero exitium non mediocre parit.
Si quicquam rogit, sic respondere studebis,
Ut laudem dictis & mereare decus.
Non linguâ celeri nimis, aut laudabere tardâ ;
Est virtus medium, quod tenuisse juvat.
Et quoties loqueris, memor esto loquere Latinè ;
Et veluti scopulos barbara verba fuge.
Præterea socios, quoties te cunque rogabunt,
Instrue ; & ignaros ad mea vota trahæ.

6 GUL. LILII *Carmen, &c.*

Qui docet indoctos, licet indoctissimus esset,
 Ipse brevi reliquis doctior esse queat,
 Sed tu nec stolidos imitabere Grammaticastros,
 Ingens Romani dedecus eloquii :
 Quorum tam fatuus nemo, aut tam barbarus ore est,
 Quem non auctorem barbara turba probet.
 Grammaticas rectè si vis cognoscere leges,
 Discere si cupias cultius ore loqui :
 Addiscas veterum clarissima scripta virorum,
 Et quos auctores turba Latina docet.
 Nunc te Virgilius, nunc ipse Terentius optat,
 Nunc simul amplecti te Ciceronis opus :
 Quos qui non didicit, nil præter somnia vidit,
 Certat & in tenebris vivere Cimmeriis.
 Sunt quos delectat (studio virtutis honestæ
 Posthabito) nugis tempora conterere :
 Sunt quibus est cordi, manibus, pedibusve sodales,
 Aut alio quovis sollicitare modo :
 Est alius, qui se dum clarum sanguine jactat,
 Insulso reliquis improbat ore genus.
 Te tam prava sequi nolum vestigia morum :
 Ne tandem factis præmia digna feras.
 Nil dabis, aut vendes, nil permutabis emesve,
 Ex damno alterius commoda nulla feres.
 Insuper & nummos, irritamenta malorum,
 Mitte aliis ; puerum nil nisi pura decent.
 Clamor, rixa, joci, mendacia, furta, cachinni,
 Sint procul à vobis ; Martis & arma procul.
 Nil penitus dices, quod turpe, aut non sit honestum :
 Est vitæ ac pariter janua lingua necis.
 Ingens crede nefas cuiquam maledicta referre,
 Jurare aut magni nomina sacra Dei.
 Denique servabis res omnes atque libellos,
 Et tecum, quoties isque redisque, feres.
 Effuge vel causas faciunt quæcunque nocentem,
 In quibus & nobis displicuisse potes.

Reco
D.
Ca

Q
rum
noro
cto n
ut in

I
Cogn
Mag
Dat
Fore
Cum
Ad c
te
Mur
Salu
Maj
Min
Ren
Ver
Dili
Lib
Qua
Fam
Blac
Ira
Nen
Mis

DIONYSII CATONIS

Disticha de Moribus, ad filium :

*Recognita de novo ad Metaphrasin Jos. Scalligeri, ejusdemque
D. Erasmi, P. Scriverii & M. Zuer. Boxhornii Notas &
Castigationes, à T. R.*

In usum scholarum.

*Illis quæ cecinit Themis aut Thymbræus Apollo,
Non canit hiccæ catus deteriora Cato.*

Præfatio cum brevissimis Præceptis.

QUum animadverterem quàm plurimos homines graviter errare in via morum, succurrendum & consulendum eorum opinioni existimaui, maxime ut gloriosè viverent, & honorem contingerent. Nunc te (fili charissime) docebo, quo pacto mores animi tui componas. Igitur præcepta mea ita legito, ut intelligas : Legere enim, & non intelligere, negligere est.

ITaque Deo supplica.

Parentes ama.

Cognatos cole.

Magistrum metue.

Datum serva.

Foro te para.

Cum bonis ambula.

Ad consilium ne accesseris, antequam voceris.

Mundus esto.

Saluta libenter.

Majori cede.

Minori parce.

Rem tuam custodi.

Verecundiam serva.

Diligentiam adhibe.

Libros lege.

Quæ legeris memento.

Familiam cura.

Blandus esto.

Irasci ab re noli.

Neminem irriseris.

Miserum ne irriseris.

Mutuum dato.

Cui des videto.

In judicium adesto.

Conjugem ama.

Liberos erudi.

Patere legem quam ipse tul-
ris.

Pauca in convivio loquere.

Convivare raro.

Quod satis est dormi.

Jusjurandum serva.

Vino te tempera.

Pugna pro patria.

Nil temere credideris.

Tu te consule.

Meretricem fuge.

Literas disce.

Nihil mentiri debes.

Bonis benefacito.

Maledictus ne esto.

Existimationem retine.

Æquum judica.

Parentes patientiâ vince.

Beneficii accepti memor esto.
 Ad prætorium statò.
 Consultus esto.
 Utere virtute.
 Iracundiam tempera.
 Trocho lude.

Aleas fuge.
 Nihil ex arbitrio virium feceris.
 Minorem te ne contempseris.
 Aliena concupiscere noli.
 Illud stude quod iustum est.
 Amorem libenter ferto.

DISTICHORUM de Moribus

LIBER I.

Dei cultus præcipuus.

SI Deus est animus, nobis ut carmina dicunt,
 Hic tibi præcipuè sit purâ mente colendus.

Somnolentia vitanda.

Plus vigila semper, nec somno deditus esto :
 Nam diuturna quies vitiis alimenta ministrat.

Cobibenda lingua.

Virtutem primam esse puta compescere linguam ;
 Proximus ille Deo, qui scit ratione tacere.

Sibi ipsi conveniendum.

Sperne repugnando tibi tu contrarius esse :
 Conveniet nulli qui secum dissidet ipse.

Nemo temere culpandus.

Si vitam inspicias hominum, si denique mores,
 Cum culpas alios ; nemo sine crimine vivit.

Utilitas divitiis anteponenda.

Quæ nocitura tenes, quamvis sint chara, relinque :
 Utilitas opibus præponi tempore debet.

Mores pro tempore mutandi.

Et † levis & constans, ut res expostulat, esto :
 Temporibus mores sapiens sine crimine mutat.

Uxori non semper assentiendum.

Nil temere uxori de servis crede querenti :
 Sæpe etenim mulier, quem conjunx diligit, odit.

Instandum correctioni amici.

Cumque mones aliquem, nec se velit ipse moneri,
 Si tibi sit charus, noli desistere cœptis.

Stulti verbis non vincuntur.

Contra verbosos noli contendere verbis :
 Sermo datur cunctis, animi sapientia paucis.

Amicus sibi quisque primus.

Dilige sic alios, ut sis tibi charus amicus,
 Sic bonus esto bonis, ne te mala damna sequantur.

† al. Con-
 stans aut le-
 vis, repug-
 nante metro.

LIBER I.

Rumores spargere vetitum.

Rumores fuge, ne incipias novus auctor haberi :
Nam nulli tacuisse nocet, nocet esse locutum.

Fides aliena non promittenda.

Rem tibi promissam certò promittere noli :
Rara fides ideo est, quia multi multa loquuntur.

Judex quisque sit sui.

Cùm te aliquis laudat, judex tuus esse memento :
Plus aliis de te, quàm tu tibi credere noli.

Beneficiorum ratio.

Officium alterius multis narrare memento :
Atque aliis cùm tu benefeceris, ipse fileto.

Senio bene gesta referenda.

Multorum cùm facta senex & dicta recenses,
Fac tibi succurrant, juvenis quæ seceris ipse.

Suspicionis labes.

Ne cures si quis tacito sermone loquatur :
Conscius ipse sibi de se putat omnia dici.

In prosperis de adversis cogitandum.

Cùm fueris felix, quæ sunt adversa caveto :
Non eodem cursu respondent ultima primis.

Mors alterius non speranda.

Cùm dubia & fragilis sit nobis vita tributa,
In morte alterius spem tu tibi ponere noli.

Animus in dono estimandus.

Exiguum munus cùm dat tibi pauper amicus,
Accipito placidè, plenè & laudare memento.

Paupertas toleranda.

Infantem nudum cùm te natura creârit,
Paupertatis onus patienter ferre memento.

Mors non formidanda.

Ne timeas illam, quæ vitæ est ultima finis :
Qui mortem metuit, quod vivit perdit id ipsum.

Amicorum ingratitude fugienda.

Si tibi pro meritis nemo respondet amicus,
Incusare Deum noli, sed te ipse coërce.

Frugalitas.

Ne tibi quid desit quæsis utere parcè :
Utque quod est ferves, semper tibi deesse putato.

Promissio iterata molesta.

Quod præstare potes, ne bis promiseris ulli :
Ne sis ventosus, dum vis bonus ipse videri.

Ars arte deludenda.

Qui simulat verbis, nec corde est fidus amicus :
Tu quoque fac simile ; sic ars deluditur arte.

Distichorum CATONIS

Blandiloquentia suspecta.

Noli homines blando nimium sermone probare :
Fistula dulcè canit, volucrum dum decipit auceps.

Liberi artibus instruendi.

Cum tibi sint nati, nec opes ; tunc artibus illos
Instrue, quò possint inopem defendere vitam.

Res quomodo aestimanda.

Quod vile est, carum ; quod carum est, vile putato :
Sic tibi nec cupidus, nec avarus habebis ulli.

Culpata non facienda.

Quæ culpare soles, ea tu ne feceris ipse :
Turpe est doctori cum culpa redarguit ipsum.

Concedenda petenda.

Quod justum est petito, vel quod videatur honestum :
Nam stultum est petere id quod possit jure negari.

Nota ignotis non commutanda.

Ignotum tibi tu noli præponere notis :
Cognita iudicio constant, incognita casu.

Dies quisque supremus putandus.

Cum dubia incertis versetur vita periculis,
Pro lucro tibi pone diem † quocunque laboras.

Obsecundandum amicis.

Vincere cum possis, interdum cede sodali :
Obsequio quoniam dulces retinentur amici.

Amicitia mutua officia.

Ne dubites, cum magna petas, impendere parva :
His etenim rebus conjungit gratia charos.

Amicitia rixas odit.

Litem inferre cavè cum quo tibi gratia juncta est :
Ira odium generat, concordia nutrit amorem.

Castigatio sine ira.

Servorum ob culpam cum te dolor urget in iram,
Ipse tibi moderare, tuis ut parcere possis.

Patientia vincendum.

Quem superare potes, interdum vince ferendo :
Maxima enim morum semper patientia virtus.

Quasita sunt servanda.

Conserva potius, quæ sunt jam parta labore :
Cum labor in damno est, crescit mortalis egestas.

Consulendum sibi in primis.

Dapnatis interdum notis, & charus amicis,
Cum fueris felix, semper tibi proximus esto.

† al. quicunque

LIB. II. PRÆFATIO.

Telluris si fortè velis cognoscere cultus,
 Virgilium lêgito. Quòd si magè nôsse laboras
 Herbarum vires, Macer has tibi carmine dicet,
 Corporis ut cunctos possis depellere morbos.
 Si Romana cupis & civica noscere bella,
 Lucanum quæras, qui Martis prælia dixit.
 Si quis amare velis, vel discere amare legendo,
 Nafonem petito. Sin autem cura tibi hæc est,
 Ut sapiens vivas, audi quæ discere possis,
 Per quæ semotum vitiis traducitur ævum.
 Ergo ades, & quæ sit sapientia disce legendo.

De omnibus bene merendum.

Si potes, ignotis etiam prodesse memento :
 Utilius regno est meritis acquirere amicos.

Arcana Dei non scrutanda.

Mitte arcana Dei, eælumque inquirere quid sit :
 Cùm sis mortalis, quæ sunt mortalia cura.

Mortis timor gaudia vitæ pellit.

Linque metum lethi, nam stultum est tempore in omni,
 Dum mortem metuis, amittere gaudia vitæ.

Iracundia cavenda.

Iratus de re incerta contendere noli :
 Impedit ira animum ne possit cernere verum.

Expendendum ubi opus est.

Fac sumptum properè, cùm res desiderat ipsa :
 Dandum etenim est aliquid, cùm tempus postulat aut res.

Fortuna modica tutior.

Quod nimium est fugiro, parvo gaudere memento :
 Tuta magè est puppis modico quæ flumine fertur.

Occulta vitia reticenda.

Quod pudeat socios prudens celare memento ;
 Ne plures culpent id, quod tibi displicet uni.

Occulta tandem revelantur.

Nolo putes pravos homines peccata lucrari :
 Temporibus peccata latent, sed tempore † parent.

Imbecillitas virtute compensatur.

Corporis exigui vires contemnere noli :
 Consilio pollet cui vim natura negavit.

Cedendum potiori ad tempus.

Cui sciêris non esse parem te, tempore cede :
 Victorem à victo superari sæpe videmus.

† i. e. ap-
 parent, vul-
 gè patent,
 contra metri
 legem.

Rixandum cum familiaribus non esse.

Adversus notum noli contendere verbis :

Lis minimis verbis interdum maxima crescit.

Fortuna non quarenda sorte.

Quid Deus intendat, noli perquirere sorte :

Quid statuatur de te, sine te deliberat ipse.

Luxus odium generat.

Invidiam nimio cultu vitare memento :

Quæ si non lædit, tamen hanc sufferre molestum est.

Animus non deponendus ob iniquum iudicium.

Esto animo forti, cum sis damnatus iniquè :

Nemo diu gaudet, qui iudice vincit iniquo.

Reconciliatis lis non refricanda.

Litis præteritæ noli maledicta referre :

Post inimicitias iram meminisse malorum est.

Teipsum neque lauda neque culpa.

Nec te collaudes, nec te culpaveris ipse :

Hoc faciunt stulti, quos gloria vexat inanis.

Parfimonia.

Utere quæsitis parcè, cum sumptus abundat :

Labitur exiguo, quod partum est tempore longo.

Supercilium nonnunquam deponendum.

Insipiens esto, cum tempus postulat, aut res :

Stultitiam simulare loco prudentia summa est.

Neque prodigus, neque avarus.

Luxuriam fugito, simul & vitare memento

Crimen avaritiæ ; nam sunt contraria famæ.

Loquaci parum credendum.

Noli tu quædam referenti credere semper :

Exigua iis tribuenda fides qui multa loquuntur.

Ebrius vinum non accuset.

Quæ † potu peccas, ignoscere tu tibi noli :

Nam nullum crimen vini est, sed culpa bibentis.

† al. potus.

Amicis consilia credenda.

Consilium arcanum tacito committe sodali :

Corporis auxilium medico committe fideli.

Successus malorum ne te offendant.

Indignos noli successus ferre molestè :

Indulget fortuna malis ut lædere possit.

Futuros casus providendos.

Prospice, qui veniunt, hos casus esse ferendos :

Nam levius lædit, quicquid prævidimus antè.

Animus in adversis spe fovendus.

Rebus in adversis animum submittere noli :

Spem retine : spes una hominem nec morte relinquit.

Opportunitas cum contingit tenenda.

Rem tibi quam noscīs aptam, dimittere noli :
Fronte capillatā, post est occasio calva.

Futura ex præteritis colligenda.

Quod sequitur specta, quodque imminet antè, videto :
Illum imitare Deum, qui partem spectat utramque.

Vita ratio habenda.

Fortiùs ut valeas, interdum parcior esto :
Pauca voluptati debentur, plura saluti.

Multitudini cedendum.

Judicium populi nunquam contempseris unus :
Ne nulli placeas, dum vis contemnere multos.

Valetudo curanda.

Sit tibi præcipuè, quod primum est, cura salutis :
Tempora ne culpes, cum sis tibi causa doloris.

Somnia non observanda.

Somnia ne cures : nam mens humana quod optat,
Dum vigilans sperat, per somnum cernit id ipsum.

LIB. III. PRÆFATIO.

HOC quicumque voles carmen cognoscere, lector,
Quum præcepta ferat quæ sunt gratissima vitæ,
Commoda multa feres. Sin autem spreveris illud,
Non me scriptorem, sed te neglexeris ipse.

Dandam esse operam literis.

INstrue præceptis animum, nec discere cesses :
Nam sine doctrina vita est quasi mortis imago.

Moribus captanda fama.

Fortunæ donis semper parere nemento :
Non opibus bona fama datur, sed moribus ipsis.

Rectè agendo aliorum linguam ne timeas.

Cum rectè vivas, ne cures verba malorum :
Arbitrii nostri non est quod quisque loquatur.

Amici crimen celandum.

Productus testis, salvo tamen antè pudore,
Quantumcunque potes, celato crimen amici.

Blandiloquentia suspecta.

Sermones blandos blæfosque cavere memento :
Simplicitas veri † sana est, fraus ficta loquendi.

Ignava vita fugienda.

Segnitiam fugito, quæ vitæ ignavia fertur :
Nam cum animus languet, consumit inertia corpus.

Animus fessus relaxandus.

Interpone tuis interdum gaudia curis :
Ut possis animo quemvis sufferre laborem.

† Scal. fama,
i. e. indicium,
al. norma.

Malo animo neminem reprehendas.

Alterius dictum, aut factum, ne carpsferis unquam :
Exemplo simili ne te derideat alter.

Hereditas augenda.

Quod tibi fors dederit tabulis suprema notato,
Augendo serva ; ne sis quem fama loquatur.

Senectus sit munifica.

Cum tibi divitiæ superant in fine senectæ ;
Munificus facito vivas, non parcus amicis.

Verba attendenda, non os loquentis.

Utile consilium dominus ne despice servi,
Nullius sensum, si prodest, tempseris unquam.

Præsenti utendum fortunâ.

Rebus & in censu si non est quod fuit antè,
Fac vivas contentus eo quod tempora præbent.

Uxor spe dotis non querenda.

Uxorem fuge ne ducas sub nomine dotis :
Nec retinere velis, si cœperit esse molesta.

Alieno sapere exemplo.

Multorum disce exemplo quæ facta sequaris,
Quæ fugias : vita est nobis aliena magistra.

Nihil ultra vires.

Quod potes, id tentes ; operis ne pondere pressus,
Succumbat labor, & frustra tentata relinquant.

Consentire videtur qui tacet.

Quod nōsti haud rectè factum, nolito filere :
Ne videre malos imitari velle tacendo.

Rigor favore temperandus.

Judicis auxilium sub iniqua lege rogato :
Ipsæ etiam leges cupiunt ut jure regantur.

Feras quæ tuâ culpâ pateris.

Quod meritò pateris, patienter ferre memento :
Cumque reus tibi sis, ipsum te iudice damna.

Multa tegenda, sed cum iudicio.

Multa legas facito : perlectis † perlege multæ :
Nam miranda canunt, sed non credenda poetæ.

† *al. neglig.**Modeste in convivio loquendum.*

Inter convivas fac sis sermone modestus :
Ne dicare loquax, dum vis urbanus haberi.

Iracundia uxoris non formidanda.

Conjugis iratæ nōito verba timere :
Nam lachrymis struit insidias, dum scœmina plorat.

Quasitis utendum, non abutendum.

Utere quasitis, sed ne videaris abuti :
Qui sua consumunt, cum deest, aliena sequuntur.

Mors non formidanda.

Fac tibi proponas mortem non esse timendam :
Quæ bona si non est, finis tamen illa malorum est.

Uxor proba, si loquax, ferenda.

Uxoris linguam, si frugi est, ferre memento :
Namque malum est te nolle pati, hanc non posse tacere.

Pietas erga parentes.

Æquâ diligit charos pietate parentes :
Nec matrem offendas, dum vis bonus esse parenti.

LIB. IV. PRÆFATIO.

SEcuram quicumque cupis traducere vitam,
Nec vitiis hæere animum, quæ moribus obsunt ;
Hæc præcepta tibi semper relegenda memento :
Invenies aliquid quo † te nitare magistro.

Divitiarum contemptus.

† al. quo vi-
tæ utare. al.
tu te utare.

DEspice divitias, si vis animo esse beatus ;
Quas qui suspiciunt, mendicant semper, avari.

Vivere secundum naturam optimum.

Commoda naturæ nullo tibi tempore deerunt,
Si contentus eo fueris quod postulat ulus.

Res ratione regenda.

Cum sis incautus, nec rem ratione gubernes,
Noli fortunam, quæ † nulla est, dicere cæcam.

† al. non est.

Amor pecunia ad usum.

Dilige † denarium, sed parcè dilige formam,
Quam nemo sanctus, nec honestus captat † habere.

† al. denari.
† al. ab ære.

In valetudine ne opibus parcas.

Quum fueris locuples corpus curare memento :
Æger dives habet nummos, * sed non habet ipsum. * al. se.

Castigatio paterna ferenda.

Verbera cum tuleris discens aliquando magistri,
Fer patris imperium, cum verbis exit in iram.

Certa & utilia agenda.

Res age quæ profunt : rursus vitare memento
In quibus error inest, nec spes est certa laboris.

Libenter donandum.

Quod donare potes, gratis † concede roganti :
Nam rectè fecisse bonis in parte † lucrosum est.

† al. ne vende.
† al. lucrorum.

Suspicio statim expendenda.

Quod tibi suspectum est, confestim discute quid sit :
Namque solent, prinò quæ sunt neglecta, nocere.

Venus abstinentiâ cohibenda.

Cum te detineat Veneris damnosa voluptas,
Indulgere gulæ noli, quæ ventris amica est.

Homo malus, fera pessima.

Cum tibi proponas animalia cuncta timere,
Unum hominem tibi præcipio plus esse timendum.

Sapientia fortitudini præferenda.

Cum tibi prævalidæ fuerint in corpore vires,
Fac sapias; sic tu poteris vir fortis haberi.

Amicus cordis medicus.

Auxilium à notis petito, si fortè laboras :
Nec quisquam melior medicus, quàm fidus amicus.

Sacrificium spiritus dejectus.

Cum sis ipse nocens, moritur cur victima pro te ?
Stultitia est morte alterius sperare salutem.

Amicus ex moribus diligendus.

Cum tibi vel socium, vel fidum quæris amicum,
Non tibi fortuna est hominis, sed vita petenda.

Avaritia vitanda.

Utere quæsitis opibus ; fuge nomen avari :
Quid tibi divitiæ profunt, si pauper abundas ?

Voluptas inimica fama.

Si famam servare cupis, dum vivis, honestam ;
Fac fugias animo, quæ sunt mala gaudia vitæ.

Senem etiam delirum ne irriseris.

Cum sapias animo noli irridere senectam ;
Nam quicumque senet, sensus puerilis in illo est.

Opes fluxæ, ars perpetua.

Disce aliquid ; nam cum subito fortuna recessit,
Ars remanet, vitamque hominis non deserit unquam.

Mores ex verbis cogniti.

Perspicio tecum tacitus, quid quisque loquatur :
Sermo etenim mores & celat & indicat idem.

Ars usu juvanda.

Exerce studium, quamvis perceperis artem :
Ut cura ingenium, sic & manus adjuvat usum.

Vita contemptus.

Multum ne cures venturi tempora fati :
Non metuit mortem qui scit contemnere vitam.

Discendum & docendum.

Disce, sed à doctis : indoctos ipse doceto :
Propaganda etenim rerum doctrina bonarum est.

Bibendi ratio.

Hoc bibe quod possis, si tu vis vivere sanus :
Morbi causa mali nimia est * quandoque voluptas.

Nè damnes quod probaveris.

Laudâris quodcunque palam, quodcunque probâris,
Hoc vide ne rursus levitatis crimine damnes.

* al. quacunque.

Circumspectus utraque fortuna esto.

Tranquillis rebus quæ sunt adversa † timeto :

† al. caveto.

Rursus in adversis melius sperare memento.

Studio crescit sapientia.

Discere ne cesses ; curâ sapientia crescit :

Rara datur longo prudentia temporis usu.

Parcè laudandum.

Parcè laudato ; nam quem tu sæpe probaris,

Una dies, qualis fuerit, monstrabit amicus.

Discere non pudeat.

Ne pudeat, quæ nescieris, te velle doceri :

Scire aliquid laus est, † turpe est nil discere velle.

† al. culpa.

Rebus utendum ad sobrietatem.

Cum Venere & Baccho lis est, sed juncta voluptas :

Quod blandum est animo complectere, sed fuge lites.

Tristibus & tacitis non fidendum.

Demissos animo, ac tacitos vitare memento :

Quâ flumen placidum est, forsan latet altius unda.

Sors forti conferenda.

Cum tibi displiceat rerum fortuna tuarum,

Alterius specta † quo sis discrimine peior.

† al. qui sis.

Ultra vires nihil aggrediendum.

Quod potes id tenta : nam litus capere remis

Tutius est multò, quàm † velis tendere in altum.

† al. velum.

Cum justo iniquè non contendendum.

Contra hominem justum pravè contendere noli :

Semper enim Deus injustas ulciscitur iras.

Fortuna utraque æquè ferenda.

Ereptis opibus noli tu flere querendo :

Sed gaude potius, † tibi si contingat habere.

† al. si nūl.

Ab amico quid ferendum.

Est jactura gravis, quæ sunt, amittere damnis :

Sunt quædam, quæ ferre decet patienter amicum.

Tempori non confidendum.

Tempora longa tibi noli promittere vitæ :

Quocunque ingrederis sequitur mors, corpus ut umbra.

Deus quibus placandus.

† Thure Deum placare ; vitulum sine crescat aratro : † al. Ture.

Ne credas placare Deum, dum cæde litatur.

A potentioribus læsus dissimula.

Cede locum læsus, fortunæ cede potenti :

Lædere qui potuit, prodesse aliquando valebit.

Castiga teipsum.

Cum quid peccâris, castiga te ipse subinde :

Vulnera dum sanas, dolor est medicina doloris.

Amicus mutatus non vituperandus.

Damnâris nunquam, post longum tempus, amicum :
Mutavit mores ; sed pignora prima memento.

Beneficiis collatis attende.

Gratior officiis, quò sis magè charior, esto ;
Ne nomen subeas quod dicitur † officiperda. † *al. officiperda.*

Suspicionem tolle.

Suspectus cave sis, ne sis miser omnibus horis :
Nam timidis & suspectis aptissima mors est.

Humanitas erga servos.

Cùm fueris famulos proprios mercatus in usus,
Ut servos dicas, homines tamen esse nemento.

Occasionem rei commoda ne pratermittas.

Quamprimùm rapienda tibi est occasio prima,
Ne rursus quæras, quæ jam neglexeris antè.

Non latandum repentino obitu.

Morte repentinâ noli gaudere malorum :
Felices obeunt quorum sine crimine vita est.

Pauper stimulum vitet amicum.

Cùm tibi sit conjux, † ne res & fama laboret, † *al. nec.*
Vitandum ducas inimicum nomen amici.

Junge studium.

Cùm tibi contigerit studio cognoscere multa ;
Fac discas multa, & vites † nil velle doceri. † *al. non.*

Brevitas memoria amica.

Miraris verbis nudis me scribere versus ?
Hos brevitatis sensus fecit conjungere binos.

JOANNIS SULPITII Verulani
de Moribus & Civilitate Puerorum,
Carmen.

QUos decet in vita mores servare docemus,
Virtuti ut studeas, literulisque simul.
Quæ te igitur moneo, miti, puer, indole serva ;
Præque tuis oculis hæc mea jussa tene.
Omnibus in rebus studeas precor esse modestus :
Sis avidus laudis, sit tibi cura boni.
Sis pius ac sanctus, nec non venerare parentes :
Et noceas nulli, surripiasque nihil.
Futilis & mendax nunquam, nec credulus esto :
Dedecus & metuas, & reverere bonos.
Improba pestiferi fugias commercia cœtus,
Sic & honorus eris, sic eris ipse bonus.

Nec maledicta refer, nec promas turpia dictu :
Est stomachosa quidem dicere turpe tibi.
Segnitiam fugito, quæ vitæ commoda pellit :
Parce gulæ turpi, luxuriamque fuge.
Parce & avaritiæ ; bilem frangere memento,
Atque animi fastus, invidiamque simul.
Fidus sis audensque bonis ; temerarius esse
Despice : non audax sis, timidusve nimis.
Esto verecundus : rectum te lectus habebit ;
Detege nec socium, nec tua membra, puer.
Nec sis difficilis nimium, nimiumque severus,
Sed bonus & blandus conspiciare, puer.
Nec penitus mutum, nec te decet esse loquacem :
Convenit ille toro, convenit iste forō.
Hæc te servantem vitæ laus spesque futuræ ;
Spernentem turpis pœnaque morsque manent.
Nunc faciles aures, animum quoque trade serenum ;
Morigerare mihi, mollia iussa dabo.
Sit sine labe toga, & facies sit lota manusque ;
Stiria nec naso pendeat ulla tuo.
Et nihil emineat, sint & sine sordibus ungues ;
Sit coma, sit turpi calceus absque luto.
Linguaque non rigeat, careant rubigine dentes :
Atque palam pudeat te fricuisse caput ;
Exprimere & pulices, scabiemque urgere nocentem ;
Ne te sordidulum, qui videt ista, vocet,
Seu spuis, aut mungis nares, nutasve, memento
Post tua concussum vertere terga caput.
Mucorem haud tangas digitis, sputumve resorbas :
Panniculo nasum mungere nempe decet.
Et ructare cave, quin os in terga reflectas :
Stringe os, & crepitum comprime, quæso, pue.
Munditiæque tibi placeant ; medio quoque cultu
Utere, ne turpis vel videare levis.
Non sum qui laudem summo te accumbere mane :
Judice conveniens me dabit hora cibum.
Nec vos ante focum cœnas producite longas :
Esse decet vivas, vivere non ut edas.
Nec sis vinosus, quamvis potâsse Catonem
Fama refert ; fugias sumere vina mera.
Namque cibus nimius, potus quoque, maxima poena ;
Corporis & vires ingenique rapit.

20 JOAN. SULPITII *Carmen.*

Infernas mensam : nitidas imposito quadras,
 Atque salem & Cererem, flumina, vina, dapes.
 Deinde precare Deum, qui nobis cuncta benignè
 Suggestit, ut sanctos det tibi mane cibos.
 Atque, puer, jubeo, sed eas vel raro, sed astans
 Pocula porge celer, tolle, repone dapes.
 Juraque convivas super importare, minister,
 Effuge ; nam turpis sæpe fit inde toga.
 Quodque jubebit herps, facilis semperque subito ;
 Quemque tibi dederit, tu tibi sume locum.
 Et licet antiqui cubuissent pectore prono,
 Te colla hæc ætas recta tenere jubet.
 Et finito mensæ cubitis hædere potentes :
 Tu tantum faciles pone, repone manus.
 Quodque vir egregius pavido tibi porrigit, illud
 Sume lubens, grates aptaque verba refer.
 Esto tribus digitis, magnos nec sumito morsus ;
 Nec duplices ossas mandere utrinque juvet.
 Te vitare velim, cupidus ne ut lurco sonoras
 Contractes fauces : mandere rite decet.
 Gausape non macules, aut pectus ; nec tibi mentum
 Stillet ; sitve tibi ne manus uncta cave.
 Sæpe ora & digitos niappâ liccabis adeptâ ;
 In quadra faciat nec tua palma moram.
 Quod tibi vicinam fuerit tu sume : sodali
 Cede tuo, referat dum tamen ille manum.
 Dumque in frustra secat, caveas sumpsisse recisa :
 Lurco legit dulces absque rubore bolos.
 Non, manibus gremio immixtis, tibi vellicet unguis
 Quod sumes : residens non agitato pedes.
 Incidasque prius quam dens contundat osellam :
 Tingantur rursus ne tibi morsa cave.
 Ne lingas digitos, nec rodas turpiter ossa,
 Ast ea cultello radere ritè potes.
 Sive super mensam cortex cumulerur, & ipsa
 Ossa, vel in quadram, præ pedibusve jace.
 Nec digitis tenta, nec pingua delige frustra :
 Et quocunque manus, huc tibi lumen eat.
 Nec socium torvè inspicias, quidve ederit ille
 Advertas : gestus inspicere sæpe tuos.
 Pocula cum sumes, tergat tibi mappa labella :
 Si tergas manibus, non mihi charus eris.

Dum manducatis,

JOAN. SULPITII Carmen. 21

Una manus sumat pateram, ni hanc jactet in hostem

† Theseus, aut Beli sint monumenta patris :

† Vid. Ovid.

Hanc binis quod si manibus captabis, id aptè

Met. 12. v. 235.

Efficies : digitis pocula sume tribus.

& Virg. Æn. 1.

v. 733.

Ac teneas oculos, nec supra pocula fare :

Plena aliqua vites sit tibi bucca cibo.

Deme merum cyatho, multum ne fortè superfit,

Quod nolit socius sumere fortè tuus.

Qui sapit, extinguet multo cum fonte salernum,

Et parco lympham diluet ille mero.

Haud facias binos haustus, nec fessus anheles,

Sibila nec labiis stridula prome tuis.

Nec citò sorbebis, velut ovi lutea grati :

Nec nimium tardâ sume falerna morâ.

Unum, siue duo, ad summum tria pocula sumes :

Si hunc numerum excedas, jam mihi potus eris.

Fac videas quodcumque bibes, modicumque pitissa :

Crater, siue calix, det tibi vina, brevis.

Os quoque tergebis semper post pocula : palmas

Ablue, quum mensam deferis, atque labra.

Denique jam grates pro donis reddito Christo,

Qui æternas nobis præparat unus opes.

Inflexensque genu, jungens & brachia, PROSIT,

Dicito : mox tolles ordine quæque sup.

REGIMEN MENSÆ honorabile.

Nemo cibum capiat, donec benedictio fiat.

Vultus hilares habea-

Sal cultello capia-

Quod edendum sit, ne peta-

Non nisi depositum capia-

Rixas & murmura fugia-

Manibus erectis sêdea-

Mappam mundam tenea-

Ne scalpatis cavea-

Aliis partem tribua-

Morsus non rejicia-

Modicum sed crebrò biba-

Grates DEO per CHRISTUM refera-

tis.

Dum manducatis,

Privetur mensâ, qui spreverit hæc documenta.

F I N I S.



RUDIMENTA PIETATIS.

In nomine Dei, Patris, Filii, & Spiritus Sancti. Amen.

ORATIO DOMINICA, *Matth. vi.*

Pater noster, qui es in cœlis, 1. Sanctificetur nomen tuum. 2. Veniat regnum tuum. 3. Fiat voluntas tua, quemadmodum in cœlo, sic etiam in terra. 4. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. 5. Et remitte nobis debita nostra, sicut & nos remittimus debitoribus nostris. 6. Et ne nos inducas in tentationem, sed libera nos à malo: quia tuum est regnum, & potentia, & gloria, in secula. *Amen.*

SYMBOLUM APOSTOLICUM.

Credo in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, Creatorem cœli & terræ: 2. Et in Iesum Christum, filium ejus unigenitum, Dominum nostrum, 3. Qui conceptus est de Spiritu Sancto, natus ex Maria Virgine, 4. Passus sub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus, & sepultus, descendit ad inferna; 5. Tertio die resurrexit à mortuis, 6. Ascendit ad cœlos, sedet ad dextram Dei Patris omnipotentis; 7. Inde venturus est judicatum vivos & mortuos. 8. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum. 9. Credo sanctam Ecclesiam catholicam, Sanctorum communionem; 10. Remissionem peccatorum; 11. Carnis resurrectionem; 12. Et vitam æternam. *Amen.*

DECALOGUS, *sive* LEX DEI.

Loquutus est DEUS omnia verba hæc. Exod. xx.

EGO sum Dominus Deus tuus, qui eduxi te ex Ægypto, è domo servitutis:

I. Non habebis deos alienos in conspectu meo.

II. Ne sculpas tibi simulacrum, nec ullam imaginem effingas eorum, quæ aut supra sunt in cœlo, aut infra in terra, aut in aquis sub terra: neque incurves te illis, neque colas ea. Ego enim sum Dominus Deus tuus, fortis, zelotes,

vindicans peccata patrum in filios, idque in tertia & quarta progenie eorum qui oderunt me, & misericordiâ utens in millesimam eorum qui diligunt me, & observant præcepta mea.

III. Ne usurpes nomen Domini Dei tui temere. Neque enim Dominus dimittet eum impunitum, qui nomen ejus vanè usurpaverit.

IV. Memento diem Sabbati sanctifices. Sex diebus operaberis, & facies omne opus tuum. At septimo die Sabbatum erit Domino Deo tuo. Non facies ullum opus, nec tu, nec filius tuus, nec filia tua, nec servus tuus, nec ancilla tua, nec jumentum tuum, nec advena qui est intra portas tuas. Nam sex diebus fecit Deus cælum, terram, & mare, & quæcunque in iis sunt: requievit autem die septimo, ideoque benedixit diei Sabbati, & sanctificavit eum.

V. Honora patrem tuum, & matrem tuam, ut diu vivas in terra, quam tibi Dominus Deus tuus daturus est.

VI. Non occides.

VII. Non committes adulterium.

VIII. Non furaberis.

IX. Non dices contra proximum tuum falsum testimonium.

X. Non concupisces domum proximi tui, non concupisces uxorem proximi tui, nec servum ejus, nec ancillam, nec bovem, nec asinum, nec quicquam eorum quæ sunt proximi tui.

SUMMA LEGIS, Matth. xxii. 34.

Pharisei, quum audivissent quòd IESUS silentium imposuisset Sadducæis, congregati sunt pariter: 35. Et interrogavit eum unus ex iis qui erat legis peritus, tentans eum, & dicens, 36. Præceptor, Quid præceptum maximum est in lege?

37. IESUS autem dixit illi, Ut diligas Dominum Deum tuum, ex toto corde tuo, & ex tota anima tua, & ex omni cogitatione tua. 38. Hoc est præceptum maximum & primum. 39. Secundum autem est simile illi: nempe, Ut diligas proximum tuum sicut te ipsum.

40. Ex his duobus præceptis pendent Lex & Prophetæ.

Quot sunt Christianæ Ecclesiæ Sacramenta?

Duo.

Quæ sunt illa?

Baptismus & sacra Cæna Domini.

INSTITUTIO BAPTISMI:

Cujus hæc sunt verba. Matth. xxviii. 19. Mar. xvi. 15.

ITE & docete omnes gentes, baptizantes eos, *In nomine Patris, & Filii, & Spiritus Sancti.* Qui crediderit, & baptizatus fuerit, servabitur: Qui non crediderit, condemnabitur. Et docete eos, ut custodiant quicquid mandavi vobis: & ecce ego vobiscum sum omnibus diebus usque ad consummationem seculi.

Hæc promissio repetitur, cùm Scriptura Baptismum nominat Lavacrum regenerationis, & ablutionem peccatorum. Tit. iii. 5. Act. xxii. 16.

INSTITUTIO COENÆ DOMINI:

Cujus hæc sunt verba. 1. Cor. xi. 23.

EGO enim accepi à Domino nostro id quod tradidi vobis: Quòd Dominus noster Iesus Christus, eâ nocte quâ proditus est, accepit panem: & gratias actis, fregit, ac dixit: *Accipite, manducate, hoc est corpus meum, quod pro vobis frangitur: Hoc facite ad memoriam mei.* Itidem & poculum, postquam cœnasset, dicendo: *Hoc poculum est novum illud fœdus per meum sanguinem: Hoc facite, quotiescunque biberitis, in mei recordationem.* Quotiescunque enim ederitis panem hunc, & poculum hoc biberitis, mortem Domini annunciabitis, usque quò venerit. Itaque quisquis ederit panem hunc, vel biberit poculum Domini indignè, reus est corporis & sanguinis Domini. Probet autem quisque se ipsum, & ita de pane illo edat, & de poculo illo bibat. Nam qui edit & bibit indignè, damnationem sibi ipsi edit & bibit, quia non decernit corpus Domini.

Hæc promissio à Paulo exprimitur, cùm inquit,

POculum gratiarum actionis, quo gratias agimus, nonne communio est sanguinis Christi? Panis quem frangimus, nonne communio est corporis Christi? Quoniam unus panis, unum corpus, multi sumus. Nam omnes unus panis participes sumus.

SUMMULA CATECHISMI.

Triplex Hominis Status.

1. { In sanctitate & sanitate. }
2. { Sub peccato & morte. }
3. { Sub Christi gratia. }

Q U Æ S T I O.

Quis hominem creavit ?
Responsio. DEUS.

Q. Qualem creavit eum ?
R. Sanctum & sanum, mundique dominum.

Q. In quem usum creatus est ?
R. Ut Deo ipsi serviret.

Q. Quod servitii genus ab eo exigebat Deus ?

R. Legis suæ præstationem.

Q. Num in legis Dei præstatione perstitit ?

R. Nequaquam : sed eam sedè transgressus est.

Q. Quæ hujus transgressionis pena ?

R. Mors æterna, cum animæ, tum corporis, & ipsi & posteris.

Q. Quomodo inde liberamur ?

R. Merâ Dei gratiâ in Christo Iesu, absque nostris meritis.

Q. Cujusmodi persona est Christus ?

R. Verè Deus, verèque homo, in persona una.

Q. Quomodo nos liberavit ?

R. Morte suâ : mortem enim nobis debitam pro nobis subivit, nosque eripuit.

Q. Num omnes liberantur per Christum ?

R. Minimè, sed ii tantum qui fide eum amplectuntur.

Q. Quid est fides ?

R. Cum mihi persuadeo Deum me omnesque Sanctos amare, nobisque Christum cum omnibus suis bonis gratis donare.

Q. Recense summam tuæ fidei.

R. Credo in Deum, Patrem, &c.

Q. Quis operatur hanc fidem in nobis ?

R. Spiritus Sanctus per Verbum & Sacramenta.

Q. Quomodo eam operatur per Verbum & Sacramenta ?

R. Aperit cor, ut Deo loquenti in Verbo & Sacramentis credamus.

Q. Quid est Dei verbum ?

R. Quicquid veteris ac novi Testamenti libris continetur.

Q. Verbi Dei quot partes ?

R. Dux, Lex & Evangelium.

Q. Quid est Lex ?

R. Doctrina Dei, debitum à nobis exigens, & quia non sumus solvendo, damnans.

26 SUMMULA CATECHISMI.

Q. Quid Evangelium?

R. Doctrina Christum cum omnibus suis bonis nobis offerens, debitumque nostrum ab eo solutum, nosque liberos esse proclamans.

Q. Quid Sacramenta?

R. Sigilla Dei, significantia & donantia nobis Christum cum omnibus suis bonis.

Q. Quæ hæc Christi bona?

R. Amor Dei, Spiritus Sanctus, unio nostri cum Christo: unde remissio peccatorum, sanatio naturæ, spiritualis nutritio & vita æterna promanant.

Q. Quot sunt Novi Testamenti Sacramenta?

R. Duo, Baptismus & sacra Cæna.

Q. Quid est Baptismus?

R. Sacramentum infusionis nostræ in Christum, & ablutionis à peccatis.

Q. Quid infusio nostri in Christum?

R. Unio nostri cum Christo: unde manat remissio peccatorum & perpetua resipiscencia.

Q. Baptismus quid juvat fidem?

R. Testatur, ut aquâ corpus abluatur, sic, operante Spiritu Sancto, à peccatorum reatu & radice, per fidem in sanguine Christi nos repurgari.

Q. Quid est sacra Cæna?

R. Sacramentum spiritualis nutritionis nostræ in Christo.

Q. Cæna Domini quid juvat fidem?

R. Testatur, ut pane & vino corpora nostra aluntur & auferuntur; sic animas nostras corpore & sanguine Christi crucifixi ali & corroborari ad vitam æternam.

Q. Corpore & sanguine Christi quomodo alimur?

R. Dum fide percipimus, & Spiritus Sancti, qui unâ adest, vi, ea nobis applicamus.

Q. Quando fide percipimus, & nobis applicamus corpus Christi crucifixi?

R. Dum nobis persuademus, Christi mortem & crucifixionem non minùs ad nos pertinere, quàm si ipsi nos pro peccatis nostris crucifixi essemus: Persuasio autem hæc est veræ fidei.

Q. Vera fides quomodo dignoscitur?

R. Per bona opera.

Q. Quomodo cognoscuntur bona opera?

R. Si Dei legi respondeant.

Q. Recita Dei legem.

R. Audi, Israel, Ego sum Dominus, &c.

Q. Hæc lex, de quibus te admonet?

R. De officio erga Deum, & erga proximum.

Q. Quid officii debes Deo?

R. Supra omnes eum ut amem.

Q. Quid debes proximo?

R. Eum ut amem tanquam me ipsum.

Q. Potis es hæc præstare?

R. Minimè gentium; nam

SUMMULA CATECHISMI. 27

tantisper dum hîc vivimus, habitat in nobis peccatum.

Q. In Dei filiis quid hinc existit ?

R. Perennis pugna inter carnem & spiritum.

Q. In hac pugna quomodo nobis versandum ?

R. Assiduè orandum, ut Deus peccata nobis remittat, imbecillitatemque sustentet.

Q. Quomodo orandum ?

R. Ut nos docuit Christus, Pater noster, qui es, &c.

Q. Quî tibi persuades, Deum donaturum quæ petis ?

R. Quia orare jussit, pollicitusque est, quicquid peterem in Christi nomine, se mihi largiturum.

Q. Quid debes Deo pro tot beneficiis ?

R. Ut ei gratias agam, perpetuòque serviam.

Q. Quomodo Deo serviendum ?

R. Ex verbi ipsius præscripto, ut jam dictum est.

PRÆCIPUA CÁPITA

CHRISTIANÆ RELIGIONIS,

desumpta è Sacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.

I. De D E O.

Joan. iv. 24. D EUS est Spiritus.—

Apoc. iv. 8. Sanctus, Sanctus, Sanctus, Dominus Deus omnipotens, qui fuit, qui est, & qui venturus est.

Psal. cxlvii. 5. Dominus noster est magnus, multarumque virium, & sapientia ejus est immensa.

Exod. xxxiv. 6. Jehova, Jehova Deus, misericors & exorabilis, longanimis, & abundans benignitate & fide :

Vers. 7. Custodiens misericordiam millibus, condonans iniquitatem, transgressionem & peccatum, & qui nullo pacto absolvet nocentem.

Deut. vi. 4. Jehova Deus noster est unus Jehova.

Joan. v. 7. Tres sunt qui testantur in cœlo, Pater, Sermo, & Spiritus Sanctus ; & hi tres sunt unum.

II. De creatione, lapsu, peccato, & miseriâ Hominis.

Gen. i. 26. E T Deus dixit, Faciamus hominem ad imaginem nostram, secundum similitudinem nostram.

Vers. 27. Itaque Deus creavit hominem ad imaginem suam, ad imaginem Dei creavit eum.—

Eccl. vii. 29. Deus fecit hominem rectum.—

Rom. v. 12. Peccatum intravit in mundum per unum hominem, & mors per peccatum, & ita mors pervasit ad omnes homines, quatenus omnes peccarunt.

Rom. iii. 23. Omnes peccaverunt, ac deficiuntur gloriâ Dei.

Psal. li. 5. En formatus sum in iniquitate, & in peccato mater mea concepit me.

III. De Redemptione generis humani per Iesum Christum.

Joan. iii. 16. **D**EUS sic amavit mundum, ut dederit filium suum unigenitum, ut quisquis credit in eum, non pereat, sed habeat vitam æternam.

I Jo. iv. 9. Amor Dei patuit erga nos in hoc, quod Deus misit filium suum unigenitum in mundum, ut vivamus per eum.

V. 10. In hoc est amor, non quod nos dilexerimus Deum, sed quod ipse dilexerit nos, & miserit filium suum, ut esset piaculum pro peccatis nostris.

I Pet. iii. 18. Christus quoque passus est semel pro peccatis, justus pro injustis, ut adduceret nos ad Deum.

I Pet. ii. 24. Qui ipsemet sustulit peccata nostra in suo corpore super lignum, ut nos mortui peccatis, viveremus justitiæ; cujus vibicibus sanati sumus.

Tit. ii. 14. Qui dedit seipsum pro nobis ut redimeret nos ab omni iniquitate, & purificaret sibi ipsi populum peculiarem, accensum studio bonorum operum.

IV. De iis quæ Deus à nobis exigit, ut salutem per Christum consequamur.

Ast. xvi. 30. **D**Ixit, Domini, quid faciendum est mihi, ut sim salvus. *Vers. 31.* Et illi dixerunt, Crede in Dominum Iesum, & salvaberis.

Ast. iii. 19. Resipiscite, & convertimini, ut peccata vestra deleantur, cum tempora recreationis venient à conspectu Domini.

Isa. lv. 6. Quærite Jehovam dum possit inveniri; invocate eum dum est propinquus.

Vers. 7. Improbus derelinquat viam suam, & vir iniquus cogitationes suas; revertaturque ad Jehovam, & miserebitur illius: & ad Deum nostrum, quia plurimum condonabit.

Luc. ix. 23. Si quis vult venire post me, ipse abneget se, tollatque suam crucem quotidie, & sequatur me.

Matth. xi. 28. Venite ad me omnes qui laboratis & onerati estis, & ego recreabo vos.

Vers. 20. Attollite jugum meum in vos, & discite à me, quia mitis sum & humilis corde; & invenietis requiem animabus vestris.

Vers. 30. Jugum enim meum est facile, & onus meum est leve.

Heb. v. 9. Perfectus factus est auctor salutis æternæ omnibus obedientibus sibi.

Jo. xiv. 15. Si amatis me, servate præcepta mea.

Jo. xv. 14. Vos estis amici mei, si feceritis quæcunque ego præcipio vobis.

Tit. ii. 11. Gratia Dei, quæ salutem adfert, apparuit omnibus hominibus;

Vers. 12. Erudiens nos, ut, abnegatâ impietate & mundanis cupiditatibus, vivamus sobriè, justè, & piè in hoc præsentis seculi.

Mic. vi. 8. Indicavit tibi, O homo! quid sit bonum; & quid exigit Jehova à te, nisi ut æquum facias, & ames misericordiam, & ambules submissè cum Deo tuo?

Col. iii. 5. Mortificate igitur vestra membra terrestria; scortationem, impuritatem, libidinem, cupiditatem malam, & avaritiam, quæ est idololatria:

Vers. 6. Propter quæ, ira Dei venit super filios contumaces.

Vers. 8. ——— Deponite hæc omnia, iram, excandescentiam, malitiam, maledicentiam, obscœnitatem verborum ex ore vestro.

Vers. 9. Ne mentimini alii aliis.

Vers. 12. Induite igitur (ut electi Dei, sancti amatique) viscera misericordiæ, benignitatem, submissionem animi, lenitatem, patientiam;

Vers. 13. Sufferentes alii alios, & condonantes alii aliis: si quis habet querelam adversus aliquem, quemadmodum Christus condonavit vobis, sic quoque vos facite.

Vers. 14. Super omnia autem induite charitatem, quæ est vinculum perfectionis.

I Thes. iv. 11. Et ut studeatis esse quieti, & agere res vestras, & operari propriis manibus, sicut præcepimus vobis.

I Pet. ii. 27. Timete Deum, honorate regem.

Rom. xiii. 1. Omnis anima esto subiecta potestatibus supereminentibus: nulla enim est potestas nisi à Deo: potestates quæ sunt, sunt ordinatæ à Deo.

Vers. 2. Itaque quisquis obstitit potestati, obstitit ordinationi Dei: qui autem obstant, accipient condemnationem sibi ipsis.

I Thes. v. 12. Rogamus autem vos, fratres, ut agnoscatis eos qui laborant inter vos, & præsumt vobis in Domino, & admonent vos.

Vers. 13. Et faciatis eos maximi cum amore, propter opus ipsorum.

Heb. xiii. 17. Parete gubernatoribus vestris, & obsequimini, nam ii vigilant pro animabus vestris, tanquam reddituri rationem; ut faciant id cum gaudio, & non cum dolore; id enim est inutile vobis.

Col. iii. 18. Uxores, submittite vos viris vestris, ut convenit in Domino.

Vers. 19. Viri, diligite uxores, & ne estote amarulenti adversus eas.

Eph. vi. 1. Liberi, obedite parentibus vestris in Domino, id enim æquum est.

Vers. 4. Et vos patres, ne provocate liberos vestros ad iram, sed educate eos in disciplina & admonitione Domini.

Col. iii. 22. Servi, obedite dominis vestris in omnibus secundum carnem, non serviendo ad oculum, ut captantes gratiam hominum, sed cum simplicitate cordis, timentes Deum.

Vers. 23. Ac quicquid facitis, agitote id ex animo, tanquam Domino & non hominibus.

Col. iv. 1. Domini, præstate jus & æquum servis vestris, scientes vos quoque habere Dominum in cœlis.

Matth. vii. 12. Quæcunque igitur volueritis ut homines faciant vobis, vos facite etiam ita eis.

Matth. xxiv. 13. Qui sustinuerit ad finem, is servabitur.

Gal. vi. 9. Ne defetiscamur rectè faciendo; nam debito tempore metemus, si non fatigemur.

Apoc. ii. 10. Esto fidelis usque ad mortem, & dabo tibi coronam vitæ.

V. De necessitate hæc præstandi.

Jo. iii. 36. **Q**UI credit in filium, habet vitam æternam; qui verò non credit filio, non videbit vitam, sed ira Dei manet super eum.

Luc. xiii. 3, 5. Nisi resipiscatis, omnes similiter peribitis.

Ezek. xxxiii. 11. Sic ego vivam, inquit Dominus Jehova, ut non delector morte impii, sed ut impius recedat à via sua, & vivat. Recedite, recedite à malis viis vestris, cur enim moreremini?

Ezek. xviii. 30. Resipiscite, & avertite vos ab omnibus peccatis vestris ita iniquitas non erit exitio vobis.

V. 31. Abjicite à vobis omnes transgressiones vestras, quibus transgressi

estis; & facite vobis cor novum, & spiritum novum, nam quare moremini?
Vers. 32. Non enim delector morte morientis, dicit Dominus Jehova; convertite igitur vos, & vivite.

Jo. iiii. 3. — Nisi quis denuò natus fuerit, non potest videre regnum Dei.

Matth. xviii. 3. Nisi convertamini, & fiat ut pueruli, non intrabitis in regnum cœlorum.

Luc. vi. 46. Quid verò vocatis me, Domine, Domine, & non facitis quæ dico.

Heb. xii. 14. Sectamini pacem cum omnibus, & sanctimoniam, sine qua nemo videbit Dominum.

1 Cor. vi. 9. An ignoratis injustos non esse possessuros regnum Dei? Ne errate, neque scortatores, nec idololatræ, nec adulteri, nec molles, nec prædicores,

Vers. 10. Nec fures, nec avari, nec ebriosi, nec conviciatores, ne rapaces possidebunt regnum Dei.

Heb. x. 38 — Si quis se subtraxerit, non erit acceptus animo meo.

VI. De modis obtinendi gratiam à Deo, viresque ad hæc facienda.

Luc. xi. 9. **P**ETITE & dabitur vobis, quærite & invenietis, pulsate & aperietur vobis.

Vers. 10. Quisquis enim petit, accipit; & qui quærit, invenit; & aperietur pulsanti.

V. 13. Si vos, qui mali estis, sciatis dare bona dona vestris liberis; quanto magis Pater vester cœlestis dabit Sanctum Spiritum petentibus à se?

1 Pet. iii. 21. Cui rei cōsimilis figura, nempe Baptismus, nunc quoque servat nos, non detractio sordium corporis, sed stipulatio bonæ conscientiae apud Deum, per resurrectionem Iesu Christi.

1 Cor. xi. 23. Dominus Iesus, eâ nocte quâ proditus est, accepit panem:

Vers. 24. Et gratis ætis, fregit, ac dixit, Accipite, comedite, hoc est meum corpus quod frangitur pro vobis, hoc facite ad memoriam mei.

Vers. 25. Itidem accepit poculum, postquam cœnasset, dicens; Hoc poculum est novum sœdus per meum sanguinem, hoc facite, quoties biberitis, ad memoriam mei.

Vers. 26. Quoties enim ederitis panem hunc, & biberitis poculum hoc, annuntiatis mortem Domini donec veniat.

1 Cor. x. 16. Poculum benedictionis cui benedicimus, nonne est communio sanguinis Christi? Panis quem frangimus, nonne est communio corporis Christi?

Psal. cxix. 9. Quomodo puer purificabit semitam suam? observando eam secundum verbum tuum.

V. 11. Recondidi sermonem tuum in animo meo, ut non peccem in te.

V. 59. Recogitavi meos mores, & converti pedes meos ad tua testimonia.

V. 60. Festinavi, ac non cunctatus sum, observare mandata tua.

Prov. iii. 5. Confide Jehovæ toto corde, neve innitere tuæ prudentiæ.

Vers. 6. Agnosce eum in omnibus viis tuis, & is diriget gressus tuos.

VII. De quatuor ultimis, viz. de Morte & Iudicio, Cælo & Inferno.

Heb. ix. 27. **S**TATUTUM est omnibus hominibus ut semel moriantur, postea verò iudicium.

Joan. v. 28. Hora venit, in qua omnes qui sunt in monumentis suis audient ejus vocem.

Vers. 29. Et prodibunt qui fecerint bona, in resurrectionem vitæ, qui verò egerint mala, in resurrectionem condemnationis.

2 Cor. v. 10. Comparandum est nobis omnibus ante tribunal Christi, ut unusquisque accipiat ea quæ fecerit in corpore, congruenter ad ea quæ fecerit, sive bonum sive malum.

Matth. xxv. 34. Tunc dicet Rex iis qui erunt ad dextram ejus, Adeste, benedicti Patris mei, possidete regnum paratum vobis à jacto fundamento mundi.

Vers. 41. Tunc dicet etiam iis qui erunt ad sinistram, Facecite a me, execrati, in æternum ignem paratum diabolo & angelis ejus.

Vers. 46. Et isti abibunt in æternum supplicium, justii verò in æternam vitam.

2 Thes. i. 7. Dominus Iesus revelabitur de cælo cum potentibus angelis suis.

Vers. 8. In flammante igne sumens ultionem de iis qui nesciunt Deum, neque obediunt Evangelio Domini nostri Iesu Christi :

Vers. 9. Qui dabunt pœnas æterno exitio, à facie Domini & à gloria potentia ejus : cum venerit, ut glorificetur in sanctis suis, et ut sit admirandus omnibus credentibus.

Two Prayers to be taught unto Children at School, with a Form of blessing God before and after Meat.

Morning Prayer.

O GOD, I praise thee for the Creation of the World, and for the Redemption of Mankind by the Lord Jesus, and for thy many Favours bestowed on me : Thou didst safely take me from the Womb, and hast ever since cared for me : Thou hast by thy Mercy caused me to be born within thy Church, where I was early given to thee in Baptism : Thou hast afforded me the Means of Grace, and called me to the Hope of Glory.

But, O most merciful Father, I a poor and miserable Sinner, conceived in Sin, and brought forth in Iniquity ; have gone astray from thee ; I have not cared to know thee, and to do thy Will, but have done my own Will, and followed my foolish and sinful Inclinations, and do therefore deserve thy Wrath and Curse. O Lord, have Mercy upon me, turn me unto thee, and grant me Repentance and Forgiveness of all my Sins for Jesus Sake. Let it from henceforth become my chiefest Care to please thee, and to seek thy Kingdom and Righteousness. Work in me a true Faith, a lively Hope, and a fervent Charity ; make me humble, meek, patient, sober, and just, and loving to all Men, submissive and obedient to them that are over me, and well content and thankful in every Condition of Life ; grant that I may daily grow in knowing, loving, fearing, and obeying thee ; create in me a clean Heart, O God, and renew a right Spirit within me.

I thank thee, O Lord, for the Care of me this Night, watch over me this Day ; keep me mindful that I am always in thy Sight, that I may be in thy Fear all the Day long : And grant that through the whole Course of my Life I may be holy and harmless in all Manner of Conversation, that when this short and frail Life is at an End, I may be made partaker of everlasting Life, through the Merits of Jesus Christ our Lord, in whose Name and Words I pray, *Our Father, which art in Heaven, &c.*

Evening Prayer.

MOST gracious God, what shall I render unto thee for thy many and great Benefits bestowed upon me; though I have been undutiful and disobedient Servant unto thee. Thou hast continued thy Care and Kindness for me ever since I was born, and hast preserved me this Day; let me never forget thy Goodness, but grant thereby I may be led to Repentance and Amendment of Life. Preserve me from every thing that is displeasing to thee. O Lord, keep me from cursing, swearing, and lying, from Pride, Stubbornness, Idleness. Work in me an utter Dislike of all Uncleanliness, of Gluttony and Drunkenness, of all Malice and Envy, of Strife and Contention, of Deceit and Covetousness. Give me Grace to deny all ungodliness and worldly Lusts, and to live godly, righteously and soberly in this present World. Cause me to understand and consider thy Laws and Life of Jesus, that I may do his Will and follow his Steps. Let never the Cares of this Life, nor the Love of Riches, nor the Company, nor the corrupt Custom of the World, withdraw me from the Obedience of thy Laws; but strengthen and establish me by thy Holy Spirit, that I may live and die thy faithful Servant.

O Lord, send thy Gospel thro' the World; pour out plentifully thy Spirit of Truth, Holiness and Peace on all People: Bless the Church and Kingdom: Preserve the King and all the Royal Family: Guide our Judges and Magistrates, sanctify and assist the Ministers of the Gospel: Visit all that are in Trouble, and sanctify their Afflictions: Be gracious unto all my Kindred, Friends and Neighbours; and bless and forgive all mine Enemies.

Lord, watch over me this Night, and keep me ever mindful that I am shortly to die and come to Judgment, that I may without Delay turn to thee, and pass the Time of my sojourning here in thy Fear. Good Lord, hear me, and grant these my Desires, and what else thou knowest to be needful for me, for the sake of Jesus, in whose Name and Words I pray, *Our Father, &c.*

Grace before Meat.

O Lord, be merciful unto us, and pardon our Sins; sanctify the use of thy good Benefits, that we, by the sober and thankful Use of them, may be enabled for thy Service, through Jesus Christ our Lord and Saviour. *Amen.*

Grace after Meat.

WE thank and praise thee, O Lord, the Giver of all Good, who hast at this Time fed our Bodies; stir up in us a greater Care for our Souls; and grant that our short Lives, which are so carefully sustained by thy Bounty, may be spent in doing thy Will. Lead us safely through this vain and sinful World, in which we are Pilgrims and Strangers, and at length bring us to everlasting Rest, through Jesus Christ. *Amen.*

F I N I S.



y m
bet.
ntiu
pres
nt
d, k
ess
f G
Con
all
l so
ider
s Ste
nor e
ne fr
by t

fly t
Chur
Gui
e Go
ions
s; a

l tha
Dela
y Fea
se the
e Nan

y the
Use
r Lot

d, wh
er Can
refull
ead u
ilgrim
ugh Je



